



This novel Provide It
INTRO

Team's

- IN THE CHANGING ROOM (WEDDING HALL) -

I put on my wedding dress and looked at myself in the mirror.

I tried forcing a smile but it didn't work my painful heart couldn't allow me. I blinked for sometime to avoid the tears from ruining my make up.

"ohhh you look so beautiful" a voice said behind me. I looked through the window to see who it was a smile was formed on my face when I saw my very own best friend Thami.

Me: Thank you.

Thami: ohh you don't look happy though.

Me: aren't I smiling?

Thami: I am your best friend.

she was right she is my best friend and she knows me best.

I turned and looked at her.

Me: lets just pretend that I am happy. ok?

she looked at me. I could tell what she wanted to say.

Me: (sigh) how is Jamal?

Thami: he is..... also pretending to be happy.

Me: (smile in sadness) I am jerk right?

Thami: yep you are. I cant believe you chose your family yet again. if I was Jamal I would at least leave you with a hot slap. that boy has been patient with you for long.

I smiled as I looked down and played with my fingers.

Me: I know right?

I said still looking down at my fingers.

Thami: Tiana do you really want to sacrifice your true love with Jamal just for family?

Tiana: I wish I had another choice. I wish I knew how to choose both. but..

Thami: what's so hard about choosing Jamal? are you afraid that your family might disown you? we are here. or is it about money? is that why you agreed to marry him because he is from a rich family?

Tiana: its not that.

Thami: then what Tiana? I still don't understand.

Tiana: I.... I...

"it is time" that Bree coming in the room to get me to the hall.

I looked at Thami and just looked down. I then smiled and stood up.

Me: its time Thami I have to go and meet my husband to be.

Thami looked at me. it was clear that she needed answers. I just smiled and she walked out clearly looking back in doubt.

after she left I sighed and blinked again to remove the tears from my eyes.

- MINUTES LATER -

I walked in with my dad holding my hand the hall was full reporters flashing lights on me and me keeping a straight smile to brighten on the pictures and clearly not embarrass anyone especially my family.

I hope my acne was covered well I should at least look good in those pictures for such a sacrifice I am making.

I walked towards my husband to be with a smile on my face and also holding my breath in this tight dress.

The people who got this dress thought if I don't have the face for it I should at least suck my stomach in and force a tight dress in I felt as if I was suffocating.

My Husband to be was the pushed towards me in his wheelchair. my dad handed me to him with a smile.

I held his hand and as I walked towards the priest he was pushed towards the priests as well.

I couldn't see his face it was covered with a mask not a mouth mask that covers your mouth and nose but a mask you wear when you go to a masquerade.

he never came public about why he wears a mask in public but rumour has it that he is covering his scars that he got when he was involved in an accident.

he isn't seen outside a lot his brothers are the ones taking care of the business and it is said that he is always at home healing.

- MOMENTS LATER -

Pastor: I now pronounce you husband and wife you may kiss the bride.

I walked closer to him

Sponsored

bent my knees a little and leaned in to kiss him.

our lips met. the audience cheered and clapped for us. not forgetting the media getting a good view with their cameras.

after letting my lips sit on his for a while I then pulled out of the kiss and stood up straight looking at him.

I then smiled and looked around.

- MOMENTS LATER -

It was time for us to get in the car and head to our home as a married couple.

I walked out the hall while pushing my husband. the media was flashing us with their camera lights and people were cheering and clapping. I had to keep my smile for the media. I didn't want mistakes.

as I was walking to the car I saw Jamal.

he had a hoodie and wore a cap but I could tell it was him.

he looked at me as I also looked at him but I quickly remembered that I am in front of the camera so I kept my smile and looked around waving goodbye while pushing my husband.

when we got to the car one of his brothers helped him get in the car.

I also got in.

after a while the car started driving away.

I bowed my head as I realised that there was no going back but I never let my tears get the better of me.

I was expecting him to say something anything like ask for my name or just break the ice but he never said anything he kept quiet.

I kept side looking at him to see if maybe he was nervous like me or something but he seemed calm and just still.

I then swallowed my pride and took a deep breath.

Me: hi my name is Tiana Kekana I mean Khoza and you?

Him: don't you already know me?

Me: huh... n... no..

Him: is it because of the mask? I bet you didn't want to marry a cripple? did I mess up your life?

I didn't know how to answer that question so I stayed silent and looked at my fingers.

he didn't say anything I also didn't know what to ask him so we had a silent ride.

- MOMENTS LATER -

we arrived at our house and it was preddy big.

I was amazed.

the car parked in the yard then we got out. his security men ran to the car to help him out.

they also pushed him towards the door. he wasn't even concerned about me. I was like just somehow who had to follow him around I guess.

I sighed as the driver came to me.

Him: this way ma'am.

Me: thank you sir.

he walked with me as he also helped me hold my dress.

we walked in and I couldn't help but look around at the beautiful surroundings.

Me: he stays here?

that was a rhetorical question but the driver answered me anyway.

Him: yes he does. he actually spends all his time in these walls. he has been like that since the accident.

Me: ohhh!

he continued leading me.

I couldn't see where my husband went but he was in this house.

maybe he is already in our bedroom.

I was taken upstairs to our bedroom.

when we arrived the room was big very big. the bed was big too but I guess its normal since I will be sleeping with someone.

it fits for 2.

I walked around still in my gown.

me: its so spacious.

Him: this will be your room ma'am.

Me: my room? I am not sharing a room with my husband?

Him: no ma'am. you will be here and Mr Khoza will be sleeping in his room.

Me: oh...

I didn't have words but I guess its normal right? maybe he was also forced in this so he might be trying to make me feel comfortable by making me sleeping alone. taking one step at a time. maybe that's what he wants.

Him: I shall leave you to change ma'am.

Me: ok thank you sir.

he walked out and I sat down as my smile faded and I twisted my ring that was on my finger.

"was this a wise decision?" I asked myself. "of cause it was. for the family but not for you" I answered myself.

I pushed myself back laying on my bed.

here is to my newly found life.

More New African Novels PDF Downlaod Here:

www.eBooksteach.Com

CHAPTER 1

- AT THEIR MAIN HOUSE -
- TIANA -

I felt a light wind blowing on my skin. I moved and I could feel that the blankets were not covering me. I ran my hands to pull them up making sure to keep my eyes closed I pulled them up but in that moment someone pulled them off again.

Voice: ma'am Mr Khoza asked me to wake you up.
Ma'am.

hearing the voice I turned and looked at her as I yawned and stretched my body straight. she stood there looking at me.

I sat up and reached for my phone. it was only 06:07.

I looked up at the helper with shock.

Me: its only 06:00 why am I waking up so early?

Her: Good morning Ma'am my name is Ms Moisa I will be your personal helper from today.

Me: nice to meet you so early in the morning Ms Moisa but I still don't understand why I am being woken up so early.

Ms Moisa: Mr Khoza has to eat his breakfast early so that he can have his pills at 08:00

Me: huh? so I should have breakfast with him?

Ms Moisa: you have to prepare his breakfast ma'am.

Me: me?? (looking at her shocked.

Ms Moisa: yes ma'am he requested that.

Me: well ok but then you could have woken me up at 07:30 then.

Ms Moisa: but ma'am you still have to take a shower and all that before making breakfast.

Me: huh?

Ms Moisa: I have already prepared your bath soaps and towel I wasn't sure which brand to get for you so if there is anything you don't use please let me know.

Me: oh.. ok.. did you get undergarments as well?

Ms Moisa: yes ma'am everything is prepared for you your schedule is also set for today.

Me: Schedule? was I hired somewhere without knowing?

Ms Moisa: (soft laugh) no Ma'am Mr Khoza has things to do today and as his wife you are supposed to be with him.

Me: ahhhhhh I think I just got a migraine.

Ms Moisa: you don't have to stress Ma'am that's why I am here as your personal helper to guide you and remind you of things that you have to do.

Me: (sigh) ok. is it possible to kind of cheat the schedule?

Ms Moisa: Ma'am?

Me: like instead of me showering and all that I can just sleep wake up at 07:15 wash my face wash my hands

and underarms then change and go make Mr Khoza breakfast.

she looked at me with a strange look and I could tell she was about to say no.

Me: (fake laugh) I am kidding I am joking.

she let out a soft laugh.

Me: ok I will get going now can you wait outside?

Ms Moisa: outside? I have to clean your room ma'am.

Me: don't worry about it I don't like people touching my things so can you wait outside or you can go rest for so long until I am done.

Ms Moisa: (smiles) Mr Khoza also doesn't like people touching his things.

Me: (fake smile) great you seem to know more about him.

Ms Moisa: I have been working here for a while.

Me: even before the accident?

Ms Moisa: yes ma'am.

Me: can I gossip a little?

She just looked at me smiling giving me the "I don't think so" look.

Me: hai nvm if I gossip I wont finish in time to make breakfast.

she smiled and nodded.

Me: ok you can go now I will go and take a shower.

Ms Moisa: yes ma'am.

she walked out as I intentionally got out of the blankets slowly.

just after she went out I walked to the door and locked it.

"why didn't I lock it when I went to sleep?" I hit my head and headed to make my bed.

My bedroom has its TV. I would literally stay in this room my whole life.

if it was up to me I would also put a fridge in here then this would be a full house my own hideout.

I walked in the bathroom and just looking at it I just got lazy to take a shower. Its really early.

I played music with my phone and instead of getting undressed to shower I started dancing and using things as mics. after some singing I started looking at myself in the mirror and started talking to myself.

yah I do that a lot. sometimes my mom would catch me talking to myself then I would pretend to sing just so I don't get mistaken as crazy.

I guess I had my share of singing and talking along for way too much because just when I told myself that I should start showering someone knocked on the door.

that made me check my phone for the time and it was 06:53

I widened my eyes and ran to the bathroom door looking at my bedroom door.

Me: yes??

Ms Moisa: ma'am are you almost done?

Me: yes I just got out the shower.

Ms Moisa: I will wait here ma'am.

Me: ok.

I ran in and took out the t-shirt that I was sleeping with. I took out my undergarments and threw them in the laundry basket.

here I am turning around naked looking for a cloth.

I saw a stack of face cloths. well one of them will be an emergency cloth.

I used one to wash my face quickly and my underarms then I used the other one to wash my coochy. I was washing at the basin.

after washing I used roll on I never used this brand but whatever I am not sensitive to anything my skin is hard.

after applying roll on I wore one of the undergarments placed on the drawer I then put lotion on my face only.

I didn't have clothing but men's tracksuits were packed near my undergarments

Sponsored

I take it it looked like his.

I wore them and they fit but they were a bit tight instead of being loose like how a tracksuit should be. that's because I am a bit chubby and my love handles (sbejeje) is not making any justice to the jacket. this guy is small bodied.

but its not bad. its like getting a M oversized t-shirt but you wear L.

I didn't even brush my teeth because time was against me I just rushed out finding Ms Moisa still standing outside.

Me: all done.

she gave me an awkward smile and lead me to the kitchen.

I felt as if she could tell that I didn't shower I was also not feeling refreshed my face was even feeling kinda dry and my eyes felt as if there were still "dithoko" on them. so I kept running my fingers through to take them out.

we got to the kitchen.

Ms Moisa: Mr Khoza is in his study he just asked if you had started.

me: well I will be done in a few don't worry.

Ms Moisa: yes ma'am if you need help please let me know.

Me: ok. what does he usually eat for breakfast?

Ms Moisa: he loves toasted bread scrambled eggs and Vienna but he also loves an oatmeal mixed with strawberries or a Sandwich but don't add ham he hates it.

Me: ohhhh it looks like I am the helper and you are the wife.

she smiled.

Me: I think toasted bread set is easy to make.

I saw the breadbin I went to open and there was bread so I started making breakfast.

you must be expecting me to make the best breakfast ever well lets just say I wasn't concentrating and things became bad.

I burned the toast too much the eggs were better they were very brown according to Ms Moisa Mr Khoza likes his eggs scrambled but still yellow. also he cant stomach chilly food and I almost added that in the eggs. another thing he liked liquid milk in his tea and powder milk in his coffee. mina I put liquid milk in his coffee. but he cant know right? milk is milk.

what's with these rules. hai.

well I used to steal Vienna from my grandmother's fridge when I was growing up and I know they are very

delicious raw. so I didn't fry them I just warmed them up and put them on the plate.

but then the food was ruined I was scared to take the plate to him.

Ms Moisa: I think we should just put untoasted bread and butter it with Vienna and eggs. its better then nothing.

I nodded and did that.

I then walked to the study with Ms Moisa leading me.

I knocked and the guy who drove him in the house when we arrived opened the door.

when he saw me he just gave me a small bow and opened the door. already walking in I was met with his intimidating eyes. it looks like already he was pissed.

I held the tray and walked to him to put it on the table.

Mr Khoza: its 7 minutes to 08:00 now I only have 7 minutes to eat in order to have my pills.

Me: if you start eating now you will have more time to finish then when you start eating later.

I said that looking away I was biting on my tongue. my aim was to get him to eat and not talk a lot.

I could hear some "ting ting" sound that means he was eating.

just when I was about to step out he spat the food moving back with his wheelchair.

Mr Khoza: are you crazy? are you trying to kill me?

Me: wh... no Mr Khoza I would never do that.

Mr Khoza: eat this.

I swallowed and took the fork and tasted.

it had a lot of salt but it was eatable.

Mr Khoza: how is it?

Me: it has too much salt but its still eatable.

he looked at me as if he just couldn't believe what I just said right now. I looked down.

Mr Khoza: Josh what do I do now? not only am I useless in this world but seems like my so called wife is also useless she cant take care of me.

The josh guy didn't say anything.

Me: its almost 08:00 you have the bread and Vienna then have your pills. your health is important.

Mr Khoza: Leave!

I looked at him and looked down.

I gave a slight knee bow and walked out.

Ms Moisa was already looking at me worried.

Ms Moisa: what happened? I heard Mr Khoza shout.

Me: was my eggs that bad?

Ms Moisa: you didn't taste them before serving them?

Me: no I am not used to cooking so I don't know that rule.

Ms Moisa: (sigh) I think we will have to start from scratch with you.

I scratched my head then I remembered the Coffee. he wouldn't know would he?

I looked at Ms Moisa

Me: Ms Moisa would Mr Khoza know the difference between powder milk and liquid milk in his coffee?

Ms Moisa: yes.

I bit my finger nail and looked at him as if I was already in trouble.

Ms Moisa: you didn't get it wrong now did you?

I didn't say anything I just looked back then started walking faster to the kitchen Ms Moisa just came after me also trying to catch up with me.

we got to the kitchen and I breathed leaning on the table.

Ms Moisa: what is wrong Ma'am.

Me: nothing just saving my life.

Ms Moisa: just as I thought you got it wrong.

Me: is he always this scary?

Ms Moisa: well....

Me: anyway why does he always wear a mask?

Ms Moisa: I...

Me: I am his wife...

Ms Moisa: (sigh) they say he might have a terrible scar under the mask. its very terrible that he cant even look at himself in the mirror without the mask.

Me: you sure know a lot.

Ms Moisa: I have been working here for long now and Mr Khoza is like my own brother even if he only see's us as his helpers.

Me: I am sure he also values you.

she smiled and I looked at the mess in the kitchen that I made trying to make Mr Khoza breakfast that he surely didn't even eat.

Me: (sigh) washing dishes time. but first breakfast time.

Miss Moisa: its almost like you weren't just scolded by Mr Khoza.

me: life is too short to hold on to small things I am hungry.

she smiled as I ran to the fridge.

CHAPTER 2

- LATER THE SAME DAY -

- TIANA -

I was in my room looking at my phone. I was looking at pictures of myself and Jamal (my first love). I kept sliding through the pictures refreshing the moments we had together it was surely the great time.

I was really selfish to think about my family more than my own life. how can I choose my family's happiness over my own happiness?

I was startled by the sudden knock on my bedroom door. I quickly pressed home screen and put my phone away as I walked to the door. it was Ms Moisa.

Me: Schedule time?

Ms Moisa: yes ma'am. its time for Mr Khoza to get his leg bandaged changed.

Me: Bandage? I will see wound?

Ms Moisa: huh... yes ma'am.

Me: I cant stand blood I cant.... I cant...

Ms Moisa: ma'am only you have to care of him if you don't who will? isn't that why you are here?

right not many people know that we are arranged to marry they think we got married because we were already dating secretly. this wedding was not only for business purposes but to also help Mr Khoza's image.

Me: r...right.. I guess that's correct.

Ms Moisa: Mr Khoza is waiting.

I swallowed and followed Ms Moisa.

really I cant stand blood and when I see open wounds my blood runs and my skin tightens. I don't know if I would be able to put up with the wound but I will try my best.

we walked to Mr Khoza's room.

Ms Moisa stood outside the door.

Ms Moisa: I can not go any further cheer up Mrs Khoza.

her calling me that kind of hit me in my head that I was married. it just didn't feel like it until she called me that.

I nodded and looked at the door.

I did a "4 dot" prayer or is it the "Mary" prayer?. you know the (fingers on forehead chest left chest the right chest) yah that one. then I kissed the finger.

I knocked on the door and already my heart was starting its marathon.

the door opened and it was a man who looked like a doctor.

Me: good afternoon sir.

???: Good afternoon you must be Ms Khoza?

Me: huh..... yah..

???: please come in.

I walked in the room and wow his room was way bigger then mine. it was in dark colours though mostly black grey and brown. but it was neat and smelled really great.

he was laying on the bed with his gown on.

I walked with the man towards Mr Khoza.

???: I am his personal doc. Doc Moloji.

Me: ohh nice to meet you Doc Moloji.

Doc: same here. the reason I asked you here to remove Mr Khoza's bandage is because as his wife his helper his healer its more suitable for you to do it.

I didn't say anything I was just looking at the wrapped bandage around his leg it looked really wrapped up like the scar was big.

Doc: I took care of him when he had no one now he has you trust me no matter how much he says he doesn't need anyone he actually needs someone and no one is more suitable then you since you are his partner.

I nodded as I looked at Mr Khoza who was looking the other side still keeping his mask on.

how I wish to just see his face.

I walked closer to his leg taking some chances to breath.

Doc: since its your first time I will be here to guide you and once you get the hang of it my job will start being a part time job rather then a full time job.

Mr Khoza: leave me in her hands and I wont take 1 day before I die.

I looked at him and somehow he is right. I mean will I even go though with the bandage thing? ohhhh my goodness.

Doc: don't mind him mood swings.

he smiled and I just gave a fake smile still scared of what I am about to see.

Doc: ok lets get the warm water first.

Me: warm water?

Doc: yes after removing the bandage we have to dress the wound with medicine we dilute this bottle of medicine in warm water then dress it using a clean disinfected cloth.

Me: huh.... doctor can you do it and I watch for today I really don't want to make him worse with my mistakes.

Doc: of cause we always have to make sure its done well.

the doc walked with me to get warm water from the bathroom basin tap then showed me how to dilute the medicine.

then he brought the bowl to where Mr Khoza was laying.

Doc: ok please remove the bandage.

Me: bandage?... huh.. yah.. bandage..

I could see Mr Khoza shaking his head.

I held the bandage and already my small hair on my arms and legs is starting to stand up.

my face is faced to the side but my eyes are carefully looking at the bandage to make sure I don't hurt him.

Mr Khoza kept raising his head to look at me then look to the side.

Mr Khoza: how can a person who is afraid of a wound be able to clean my wound? I told you doc I got myself a very useless wife.

Me: hai

Sponsored

who... who said I am afraid of a wound.

Mr Khoza: look at you. you haven't even unwrapped 1 bandage but already you look like you are ready to run.

Me: how many bandages are here?

Doc: just 2.

Me: oh... oh..

I continued unwrapping the bandage.

the 1st bandage was now out I was on the second one I could blood stains and the bandage was starting to be visible.

my chicken skin became visible as if it was cold and my blood ran away I shut my eyes for a bit.

Doc: are you ok Mrs Khoza?

Mr Khoza: I told you she wouldn't do it.

I swallowed and looked at him as he looked away.

Doc: its ok if you cant we can take it one step at a time.

Mr Khoza: a girl who doesn't know the deference between powder milk and liquid milk will take time to learn. by the time she gets used to it I would be healed and running.

Doc: Zithulele!!

Mr Khoza looked away.

ohh so that's his name. Zithulele Zithu mathuzathuza.
Thuzement. aight.

I smiled as I run the name thoughts in my mind then came back to reality when the doc cleared his throat.

Me: ohh sorry Doc.

I then tried removing the bandage again I tried ignoring my blood and intestines turning but then I couldn't .

I stood up and looked at the doc.

Me: I am sorry doc. I have always been scared of wounds I really cant.

Doc: its ok we will take it one step at the time.

I nodded.

Doc: to train yourself you can watch me unwrap it. its easier that way.

Me: yes doc.

The doctor unwrapped the bandage as if it was nothing but still being careful.

Zithu started to grab the sheets when the doc was now removing the bandage from the skin. he started grabbing tighter and also groaning as he raised his head.

I quickly got on his bed and went to hold his hand.

Mr Khoza: just because I let you in my room doesn't mean..... ahhhhhh!!

Me: if I were you I would hold on tight and stop talking.

I looked at the Doc as I also frowned narrowing my eyes trying to not see but also see. (you know) he kept holding me tight grabbing me tight and it was painful.

it was hard to tell if he was just reacting to the pain or just hurting me for getting on his bed.

after a while she was done the doc was cleaning his wound now.

Zithulele: what are you still doing here?

I looked at him and just got off with shame all over my face.

I got off and watched the doc clean his wound.

- LATER -

(sigh) what a moment.

I headed down making my way to the kitchen but found someone I wasn't familiar with.

Me: sorry can I help you?

???: ohhh you must be Mrs Khoza.

Me: and you are??

???: Nkululeko Khoza. I am his brother.

Me: oh sorry I didn't know.

Nkululeko: its ok.

he looked as I went to get water.

Nkululeko: you must be burdened right?

Me: sorry?

Nkululeko: as a woman you have needs and those needs have to be met but with my brother those needs will never be met doesnt that bother you?

I didn't know how to answer that. I knew what he meant but now the only way to pass this is to act dumb.

Me: needs? well I don't lack anything so far. I am fully fed.

Nkululeko: you know what I mean.

Me: I don't think I follow. you mean going out and being a normal couple? well even if we don't love each other it is part of our routine to go out in order to get the media to have a peak of our relationship or else they might find out that it was arranged.

Nkululeko: so you are ok with playing along? with a cripple masked man?

Me: isn't he a man before the other descriptions?

Nkululeko: or maybe you are in for the money? the nice life maybe?

I felt insulted when he said that. does he mean I am a gold digger? well I didn't choose to be his wife ok and I

had someone I was in love with before him. how dare he call me a gold digger.

Me: sorry sir I need to head somewhere.

I left the cup of water there and walked out the kitchen to my room.

- AT THE KEKANA'S -

Mrs Kekana: Tiana hasn't called ever since she got married? I am starting to worry if she is ok.

Slindile: how can she be ok when her parents made her breakup with her first love to marry that crippled man?

Mrs Kekana: I will slap you Thema.

Slindile just kept quiet.

Jay: I get that this all was for business purposes but I still don't understand why you chose Tiana instead of Keisha. isn't Keisha supposed to be the one arranged to marry one of the Khoza's brother.

Mrs Kekana: but where is Keisha now?

Jay: but why all of a sudden?

Slindile: let me enlighten you. since we were young mom and dad promised Keisha as the daughter to merge the family Slindile didn't have a problem since the Khoza brothers were known as handsome and rich you know how Slindile values looks and money. so she was happy she would annoy me everyday saying she is Mrs Khoza but after the accident no one saw Zithulele. until one day when he was giving a statement about his position in the

company the country was going crazy with questions after seeing Zithulele in a mask and on a wheelchair. he was asked about a mask and he said its fashion but rumour spread that he burned his face so he looks like a monster on half his face but no one knows the truth yet because Zithulele never said anything about that. Slindile knew about it and hoped that she would be marrying another brother and not Zithulele when it was revealed that it was him days before lobola she disappeared leaving a note that said "don't look for me I am not lost".

Jay: ohh little tramp. so she ran away from her responsibilities leaving us to clean after her.

Slindile: yep and now poor Tiana had to be taken in Slindile's place.

Jay: no wonder she doesn't call she believes she was sold. I would also get angry getting separated from my first love to marry someone I don't love.

Mrs Kekana was there listening yet not saying anything.

CHAPTER 3

- NEXT DAY (EVENING) -

- TIANA -

Me: mhmmm smells amazing.

Ms Moisa: (smiles) and its all your heard work.

Me: oh please it was your instructions that helped me. I was only doing what you were telling me.

Ms Moisa: still I am proud of you I actually thought you were worse then this.

Me: now I seriously wish I listened to my mom when he told me used to make me cook. now look at me.

Ms Moisa: that's why my grand mom always told me to never get married unless I know how to cook.

we laughed.

"well its not like knew I would get married" I said to myself as I smiled at her.

Me: Ms Moisa can I leave the last minutes to you? I have to go and prepare myself for dinner.

Ms Moisa: of cause.

Me: thank you.

I ran to my bedroom.

actually I never shower in the morning its a tiring thing. like imagine waking up everyday around 06:00 to shower just to make breakfast then do chores and get dirty again then around dinner time you have to "prepare" for dinner.

who "prepares" for dinner? what I know is at 19:00 someone has to go and dish up and we eat why prepare?

anyway I use that opportunity to come shower and wear my pyjamas already.

so when I wake up I just wash my face underarms coochy and feet.

Today he sent some people to my house to get my suitcase so that I can also have stuff to wear. so now I

have clothing to wear no need to wear his clothing but his tracksuit is still in my laundry.

anyway I went to take a shower wore my pyjamas and wore my gown. actually it reminds me of my mom since I took it from her.

after that I headed downstairs.

I went to the kitchen and found Ms Moisa already taking out plates.

Ms Moisa: I was about to come get you.

Me: no worries Ms Moisa I knew I had to be here before 19:00 I learned my lesson from yesterday.

she laughed.

yesterday was definitely my lesson day not only did I mess up breakfast but I messed up dinner too. I didn't mess up lunch because his doctor bought us something to have I think he asked him to bring it knowing I would mess it up.

well story short I burned the pap and it wasn't even ready to eat. how is that possible? how can something burn yet still not be ready to eat? hai! this cooking is starting to be more like maths.

so yah the pap burned but at least the meat turned out well well almost well. I wont even go into it.

so today Ms Moisa was with me in the kitchen guiding me every step and also doing something something.

its almost like Ms Moisa was cooking and I was here to to assist.

I dished up for us. all of us including helpers we had 3 helpers in the house. they stay here but weekend they go home if they want.

we started dishing out.

Ms Moisa told me yesterday that they used to have dinner together but since we need some time together they will let us have dinner together. I told her its ok if they joined she insisted that its best they give us space. so they will be having dinner in the kitchen instead of the dining room.

if you are wondering Ms Moisa is the head of all helpers here.

after dishing up I took a tray and put Mr Khoza's food on the tray took a glass of juice and a spoon.

I held it steady and walked to the dining room.

as I put the tray on the dining table Mr Khoza was brought in with his wheel chair.

Me: ohhh

Sponsored

you are already here.

he didn't say anything. he was just wheeled to the table.

I put the food in front of him on the table and took the tray.

I then walked out getting my food.

I came carrying my food casually. I had my food in a big bowl no spoon and a glass of juice as well.

I walked in and put it on the table. I then sat down.

Mr Khoza: you are going to finish that?

I looked at him and looked at my food.

Me: small water. I can more then this.

Mr Khoza: why does it seem like you might eat us living in this house?

Me: I will if you don't divorce me.

he chuckled and shook his head.

I pulled my sleeves up and dug my fingers in my food.

Mr Khoza: hai why not use a spoon?

Me: faster this way.

I said as I grabbed some food with my fingers and put them in my mouth.

Me: mhmmmm.

I said then gave him a thumbs up.

he was just looking at me as if I am crazy.

Mr Khoza: now I see why you look like that.

I looked at him.

Me: (mouthful) and what does that mean?

Mr Khoza: hai! table manners.

Me: (mouthful) huh? table have manners?

Mr Khoza: (sigh and shakes head)

Me: (mouthful) what?

he put his spoon down put his hands together leaned his hands on his hands and looked at me.

Mr Khoza: are you a pig?

I chocked on my food and held my mouth so that I wouldn't spit the food in my mouth.

after a while I swallowed and drank my juice to calm down my eyes were teary.

Me: Mr Khoza is that how you speak to woman?

Mr Khoza: well pardon me I didn't think you were human when I saw how much you eat and how you eat it resembled more of a pig.

Me: didn't it come to you that I could be a female pig?

he didn't say anything but just looked at me.

Me: you know you starting to remind me of someone I once knew.

Mr Khoza: its nice to know.

Me: he was a bully. he always used to bully.

Mr Khoza: really?

Me: mhm just like you he used to call me a pig.

I said as I put some food in my mouth.

Mr Khoza: you must have had a bad high school experience.

Me: (mouthful) not really someone told me when I get bullied laugh instead of crying it drives the bully away.

Mr Khoza: who said that?

Me: some stranger.

Mr Khoza: some kids are told not to talk to strangers you even take advices?

Me: I didn't talk to him he talked to me and gave me advice without me asking so why can't I use it. anyway it worked. I started laughing at his jokes and even reminding him to bully me sometimes the bullying became less and less as I was just going along with everything he said. my high school became better. so I learned that if you ignore the negative your life will be better.

Mr Khoza looked at me as if he was thinking of something.

Me: I hope you are not having dirty thoughts.

he looked at his food and shook his head.

I continued eating.

Me: (mouthful) anyway can I ask you something?

Mr Khoza: learn some table manners first.

I just pouted as I continued eating.

with me acting like this some may say I have forgotten about Jamal and I am trying to adjust to my marriage life. well its done its done. instead of me hurting myself with memories and all that its better to just try to adjust to this life because its my life now. I may not love him but at least try to live with him and take everyday as it comes thinking about yesterday hurts thinking about tomorrow is stressful so I rather live the moment.

as we were eating his personal helper walked in already apologizing as he says its important he shows Mr Khoza and Mr Khoza nods.

he then walks out again.

Mr Khoza looks at me as I chewed the bones of my finished meet.

Mr Khoza: you are seriously dangerous.

I give him a smile as some bones still remain in my mouth.

Mr Khoza: anyway we have to go out tomorrow.

I spat out the bones in my mouth.

Me: out?

Mr Khoza: yes its my treat.

Me: ohh so that's what the message is about? to remind us to showcase this relationship.

Mr Khoza: already burdened?

Me: someone recently called me a gold digger now that I think of it it doesn't sound like a bad idea. lets spend some money.

he chuckled and shook his head.

Mr Khoza: you need help.

CHAPTER 4

- NEXT DAY (LATE MORNING) -

- TIANA -

I finished getting dressed took my purse and walked down in a hurry. I was already late Mr Khoza told me to be ready by 10:00 but its already 10:22 and I wasn't out of my room.

I walk out and close my door then hurried down the stairs.

I get to the living room and found Mr Khoza on his wheelchair watching TV. he looked ready and smart his hair was also neat. and ofcause he had his mask on.

whoever bathes him must feel very lucky to see Mr Khoza's bare face when I "his wife" can't even see it.

Me: I am ready.

I said walking to him.

Mr Khoza: is it 10:00?

Me: (sigh) I am sorry I am late the time was just too fast.

Mr Khoza: or maybe you were too slow.

Me: yah... maybe that's the case.

Mr Khoza: you really have to learn to keep time imagine if we had to go somewhere important. (sigh) as a wife you are supposed to be making things easier for me not make it worse.

I looked down biting my tongue and running my tongue around my mouth. Mr Khoza is telling the truth besides this marriage being arranged we have to make it work because divorce is not on the list as that will separate the family.

Me: I am sorry.

Mr Khoza: that's all you know. lets go.

Me: wait!

he looked at me.

Me: how do I look?

he looked at me from top to bottom.

Mr Khoza: you failed to look good on your wedding day how can you ever look good in any clothing?

I looked at myself a bit down.

Me: huh... ok I will go change.

Mr Khoza: forget it you already wasted time we can't afford to waste more. lest go.

he wheeled himself out as I followed with my down face. but then I still feel like I look good so whatever.

I hurried to open the door for him after he walked out I followed and closed the door. I then hurried to hold his wheelchair and push him he looked at me.

Me: I am trying to make things easier for you as a wife should do.

Mr Khoza: I can wheel myself.

Me: I don't want my husbands hands to get hurt.

Mr Khoza: there is a reason I have gloves.

Me: those gloves must be expensive using them like this might tear them quicker so I will help.

I smiled and he just looked forward shaking his head. he does that a lot.

we got to the car.

The driver and another security walked to the car. I leaned towards Mr Khoza's ear.

Me: do we need to go with 2 securities?

Mr Khoza: who do you think will drive?

Me: will they be sharing the steering wheel?

Mr Khoza: (sigh) no the other one is my driver the other one is my security. do you think going to a public mall as a public figure is that easy? anything might happen so we need security for that.

Me: its not like you are a president.

Mr Khoza: can you get me in the car.

Me: yes I can.

he looked forward yet I didn't move. I just kept tapping my feet as I moved my head to the song that played in my head.

he looked up and I looked at him.

he gave me a "and then" look.

Me: am I missing something?

Him: I asked you if you can get me in the car.

Me: and I said I can.

Him: so why are you standing there. hurry!! I don't have all day.

Me: you asked me if I CAN do it you didn't ask me to DO it.

Him: huh?

Me: (sigh) "can you please get me in the car." that's what you were supposed to say.

he chuckled as he places his hand on his forehead.

Him: can you please get me in to the damn car.

Me: of cause my husband

I said with a smile.

I opened the car and offered my shoulders for him to hold on to it. it was the first time being so close to him. I was nervous because I didn't want to drop him or hurt him so I was extra careful.

I moved the wheelchair away and moved carefully towards the car he held the car with one hand and another still holding on to me.

first I made him sit on the chair then helped him move his legs in.

after he was in I sighed in relief that I didn't hurt him then walked to my side and got in.

Driver: where are we going sir?

Mr Khoza: Mrs Khoza where would you like to go?

I was still processing the fact that he called me Mrs Khoza I looked at him then at the Driver who was stealing glances from the window then at Mr Khoza again.

Me: huh... we don't have groceries right? lets go grocery shopping.

Mr Khoza: what?

Me: mhm. then we can get lunch later on.

Mr Khoza: you are not serious

Sponsored

grocery shopping is done by my helpers.

Me: then its time you experience it yourself its actually fun.

he sighed and looked out the window.

Me: Driver we will go to #####

Mr Khoza: I only buy from #####

Me: too expensive.

Mr Khoza: so? its not like I don't have money.

Me: spend wisely. I don't mind you buying some things at ##### but saying you "only" buy there? that's stupid. ##### is not the cheapest but its good price for good quality.

Mr Khoza: (sigh) whatever.

I smiled at him.

The Driver smiled and drove out.

- MINUTES LATER -

we were in the mall inside this shop buying groceries. I didn't even make a grocery list but that's ok I will buy things that I know we will need.

The security was walking behind us while the driver was pushing the trolley.

Me: ohhh and this.

I took it and put it in the trolley then we continued going shelve by shelve.

Me: ohhh I like this spice.

Mr Khoza: I can't stomach chili things.

Me: well for you not for me.

Mr Khoza: what if you make a mistake and put it in my food as well?

Me: I won't .

Mr Khoza: you are capable of doing that.

Me: I won't I promise. please!!

he looked down as he sighed.

he turned his wheelchair to move away but I hurried to block his way.

Me: please!!

Mr Khoza: (sigh) fine but if I dare find it in my food you are dead.

I raised my right hand crossing my fingers.

I then put it in the trolley.

even though I was trying so hard to ignore the staring and people taking pictures it was too much.

it was like the right to privacy and personal space was taken from us. I mean don't people know that its rude to stare and take pictures without our knowledge? I mean I know Mr Khoza is from a very well known family but he is not a celebrity.

but again I think the people were mostly staring at Mr Khoza because of his mask. its not something normal or usual to see someone with a mask on you have questions like "is he trying to look cool or is he hiding something?"

anyway he didn't seem to mind them he just focused on his own phone.

we got to the till and our Driver (Palo) brought the trolley and put the items on the counter to be scanned I helped him.

After paying and packing the groceries in the trolley to be taken to the car we headed out.

Mr Khoza: Palo you can take the groceries to the car Mrs Khoza and I will go and have lunch at #####
Driver: yes sir.

- MEANWHILE -

- AT THE KEKANA'S -

Slindile and Jay were playing video games in the living room.

Slindile: oh boy oh boy...

Jay: yah you think you can beat me.

Slindile: watch me.

as they were playing there was a knock on the door.

Slindile: jay get the door.

Jay: you get the door.

Slindile: hai nguban' omdala la?

Jay: ahhhhhh Slindile. you like pulling that card on me.

Mrs Kekana came in the living room from the kitchen.

Mrs Kekana: hai nina can't you hear someone is knocking.

Jay: ohh we didn't hear mama.

Slindile: (whisper) liar

Jay: rather that then being beaten up.

Mrs Kekana opened the door and saw Keisha at the door holding her suitcase.

Mrs Kekana: Keisha?? ubuyaphi?

anger was visible from her voice and face.

Slindile and Jay looked at each other then looked at the door.

Slindile: ayeye!

Jay: ufuna amapopcorn?

Slindile: ungakhohwe I juice.

Mrs Kekana: Keisha I am talking to you.

Keisha: sorry ma I...

Mrs Kekana: sorry? sorry? go back to where you come from.

Keisha: but ma?

Mrs Kekana closed the door and looked at Slindile and Jay who had stopped playing to listen.

Mrs Kekana: dare let her in you will join her.

they didn't say anything.

Mrs Kekana walked away.

Slindile: I was expecting more.

Jay: stopped the game for nothing.

Slindile: eash lets start again.

CONTINUATION OF 4

- AT THE MALL -

We were in the ##### restaurant waiting for our order.

Me: you don't like talking?

Mr Khoza: what would I talk about?

Me: anything.

Mr Khoza: like?

Me: mhm (thinking) ok lets start by telling each other what we love.

our order arrived.

Me: thank you.

the waiter smiled and walked away.

Me: do you want to start?

Mr Khoza: aren't we supposed to eat in silence first?

Me: mxm... you are so boring.

he didn't say anything he just started eating.

I couldn't use the fork and knife so I just used the fork to eat other things and attempted to grab my steak with my fingers.

Mr Khoza: what are you doing?

Me: eating.

Mr Khoza: don't tell me you are thinking of eating with your hands.

Me: will I kill someone if I do?

Mr Khoza: we are in public.

Me: I bet everyone eats with their hands.

Mr Khoza: can you not embarrass me.

Me: I am using my 2 fingers.

Mr Khoza: Tiana!

I looked at him as I pulled a sad face.

I looked at my meat and picked up my fork and knife.

he looked at me and reached for my plate I looked at him with a questionable look.

he reached out his hand to me. I looked at him

Me: what is it now?

Mr Khoza: bring your things.

I looked at the fork and knife in my hand I handed them to him.

I looked at him as he cut the meat in pieces for me.

I smiled as I looked at him cutting the meat.

after cutting it in small pieces he handed me my plate back and continues having his meal.

Me: thank you.

Mr Khoza: I was only doing it because we are in public. it would be more embarrassing to have you try and cut the meat.

I smiled and took the fork eating my food.

we had a very little conversation while eating he doesn't talk at all unless to tease me or give me negative feedback. mxm.

we were now having coffee. as always he specifically asked the waiter to add powder milk in his coffee and not liquid me I also asked for the same.

Me: so you are the only child?

he nodded.

Me: what about the guy who was at the house the other day?

Mr Khoza: Nkululeko?

Me: mhm he said you were his brother.

Mr Khoza: you met with him?

Me: mhm.

Mr Khoza: what did he say?

I didn't want to anger him so I didn't say anything about his brother's ugly behaviour.

Me: nothing he just greeted me.

Mr Khoza: mhm.

Me: so? isn't he your brother?

Mr Khoza: his father and my father are brothers.

Me: ohhh.

Mr Khoza: yah but he is very close to me as if he was my brother. he is the only person I trust.

Me: really?

Mr Khoza: yah he did a lot for me even after I got this accident he was there for me.

Me: may I ask what exactly happened for the accident to happen?

he looked down and bit his lower lip. he then looked at me.

Mr Khoza: lets finish our tea and go home I am tired.

I smiled and nodded. I know the accident is a very sensitive issue so I wont even try to push the topic he will tell me when he is ready to talk.

I raised my cup to have a sip and somehow something caught my attention.

as I looked on my right towards the window I saw Jamal with another girl. I kept my eyes fixed on them as they walked passed the restaurant we were in.

Mr Khoza: (clears throat)

I snapped out of it and looked at Mr Khoza.

Me: huh.. I am sorry.

I took a sip of my coffee. I could feel my heart ache and my tears threatening to come out but I held it in as I didn't want to show Mr Khoza.

Mr Khoza: we don't have to finish the coffee we can go home now.

Me: no... its a waste we should finish it.

Mr Khoza: don't you need some privacy to nurse your broken heart?

I looked at him with nothing to say.

Me: I am fine. its nothing.

Mrs Khoza: ex?

I looked at him.

do I tell him that I broke up with Jamal because of this marriage? do I tell him that this marriage ended my life and now I am living in sadness and forcing myself to smile and live freely?

do I?

I smiled and looked at him.

Me: nah... he is just someone I know. I was just sad that I won't be able to see my friends again since I am married.

Mr Khoza:

he didn't say anything

Sponsored

we should finish it.

Mr Khoza: don't you need some privacy to nurse your broken heart?

I looked at him with nothing to say.

Me: I am fine. it's nothing.

Mrs Khoza: ex?

I looked at him.

do I tell him that I broke up with Jamal because of this marriage? do I tell him that this marriage ended my life and now I am living in sadness and forcing myself to smile and live freely?

do I?

I smiled and looked at him.

Me: nah... he is just someone I know. I was just sad that I won't be able to see my friends again since I am married.

Mr Khoza:

he didn't say anything he just continued sipping on his coffee.

I also sipped on my tea calming my emotional self down.

- LATER -

We were now back at our house. funny how it's now "our" house. Today was fun I enjoyed it well until..... until I saw Jamal.

did he move on already? well why am I asking of course he should move on because I am married now. of course he can't wait for me since I am taken now. he is a free man after all

I laid on my bed letting my mind run those thoughts.

tears came down as I laid on my pillow thinking about Jamal.

does this even mean I am cheating? I mean I am married but thinking about another man. is it even the right thing to do?

I wiped my tears and just buried my face in my pillow.

- AT THE KEKANA'S -

Slindile was in the kitchen dishing up.

as she was dishing up Jay walked in.

Jay: hai sisters is Keisha still outside?

Slindile: seems like it. yhooo I have never seen mama so angry to even leave Keisha outside for so long?

Jay: eash do you think she will let her sleep outside?

Slindile: at this rate nam ang'azi.

Jay: shame.

Slindile: now that you are here please help me carry the plates to the living room.

Jay: ok.

they walked to the living room and found Mr and Mrs Kekana watching TV as if Keisha was not outside.

Slindile gave them their plates.

Slindile: mama... Keisha is still.....

Mrs Kekana: manje? do you wish to join her?

Slindile looked down and shook his head.

Keisha was still sitting outside shivering from the cold as she held her phone that was off and her suitcase.

- AT THE KHOZA'S (NKULULEKO'S BEDROOM) -

Nkululeko was on the phone with her mother.

Nkululeko: Ma don't worry everything is as planned.

Mom: my son you know that your grandpa loves Zithulele more if we don't deal with him now you can kiss that company goodbye.

Nkululeko: Zithulele trusts me so it will be easy to destroy him.

Mom: good. I am only looking out for you because once Grandpa passes away or something the Khoza family will turn their backs on you and you will be casted away like nothing even that Zithulele boy will abandon you and not call you his brother again. he only trusts you now because he needs you. we better deal with him now when he is already weak.

Nkululeko: yes mom.

CHAPTER 5

- NEXT DAY -

"AHMMMMMM" that was forcing the sh** out of my ass.

after it was out I took a moment checking my phone as I waited for my system to finish offloading dirt.

after a while I put my phone aside took the toilet paper and wiped my ass clean. I then flushed the toilet purified the air and went to wash my hands.

I walked to the bedroom and closed the door of the bathroom. I threw myself on the bed and laid preparing myself to scan for something to watch on TV.

at that moment my phone rang.

I checked the caller ID and it was Thami I answered.

Me: Thami.

Thami: Tiana how are you?

Me: mhm... ok I guess. what about you?

Thami: you don't have to pretend to be ok with me.

Me: I know. and I am not pretending I am really just ok.

Thami: and what does "ok" really mean?

Me: between fine and not fine.

Thami: mhm... I am sorry I haven't been in contact I wasn't sure whether contacting you was ok or not since you know you are married now.

Me: (sigh) yah neh. I myself haven't gotten used to seeing the ring on my finger.

Thami: is he treating you well?

Me: yah he is minding his own business and so am I.

Thami: you are not answering my question.

Me: what I am saying is everything is fine.

Thami: mhm... I am glad.

I wanted to ask her about Jamal I wanted to ask her what was going on but that wouldnt look good right? I mean I am married so why would I ask about another man? so I just decided to hold myself back.

Thami: is there anything you want to get out of your chest?

Me: me?... oh no... I am fine.

Thami: you want to ask about Jamal right?

Me:.....

Thami: right. well he is fine. I saw him yesterday and asked me about you.

Me:.... what did he ask?

Thami: he asked whether you were ok or not.

Me: and what did you say?

Thami: I told him that I haven't spoken to you since the wedding because I don't know if its appropriate and you also didn't call so he just said ok.

Me:..... oh..

Thami: are you thinking of finally chasing what's yours? its not too late.

Me: I am already married.

Thami: file a divorce tell them you were forced.

Me:.....

Thami: I see.. your family is still priority.

Me: (sigh) can we not talk about this? please.

Thami:..... (sigh) ok I am sorry.

"knocking sound on the door"

me: oh Thami please hold on there is someone at the door.

Thami: ok

I got up still carrying my phone and went to open the door. it was Ms Moisa.

Me: Ms Moisa?

Ms Moisa: yes Mrs Khoza its time.

Me: time?

Ms Moisa: didn't you read the notebook I gave you of your schedule for today? its 15:00 Mr Khoza is supposed to have his stroll around the block then take her to the garden at the back.

Me: oh I totally forgot.

placed the phone on my ear.

Me: Thami I will call you.....

Thami: I heard I heard go attend your husband Mrs Khoza.

I smiled.

Me: bye!

Thami: bye.

I hung up and hurried to wear my shoes then walked out heading downstairs with Ms Moisa.

as we got down Mr Khoza wasn't here he usually waits in the living room for me.

I looked at Ms Moisa.

Ms Moisa: he must have left with his personal helper already. go!

I walked out and as I peeked he was already towards the gate.

I hurried to them

I caught up with them just as they got out the gate.

Me: shouldn't you be waiting for me in the living room?

Mr Khoza: why should I delay myself for someone who is late?

Me: (looks at his personal helper) Thank you sir I shall take it from here.

he nodded and let me hold the wheelchair.

The suburb is not that dangerous I see white people walking their dogs here most of the time and other taking their morning run its a preddy safe and quiet place and many houses have outside cameras so its really safe as far as I can say.

Me: why is it a must for you to wheeled around the block 3 times a week?

Mr Khoza: I used to jog every morning.

Me: ohhh so you want to relive the experience?

Mr Khoza: and to see the beauty of Nature.

Me: ohhh so you are a type of person that loves nature? I was about to ask why you love the garden.

Mr Khoza: well I love it because they are the most realest beautiful things on earth.

Me: nonsense I am the most beautiful woman on earth.

Mr Khoza: (coughs)

Me: I don't care what you say I know I am.

Mr Khoza: I didn't say anything I mean I never argue with frogs when they claim to be the most beautiful creatures in the world. I just blame Disney.

I stopped the wheelchair and he looked at me.

Me: and what does that mean?

Mr Khoza: nothing.

Me: are you comparing me to a frog?

Mr Khoza: are you a frog?

I looked at him without saying anything.

Mr Khoza: lets go its getting late.

I let him be and wheeled him.

after a while a man holding a dog passed by smiling at us.

???: good afternoon.

we also greeted back.

Me: ohhh people here are friendly.

Mr Khoza: of cause they are. actually there is always friendly and kind people everywhere

Sponsored

they are just overshadowed by the majority who are rude.

Me: yah like you.

I smiled and he didn't respond.

after a long silence he spoke.

Mr Khoza: you know.... ever since I started taking wheel strolls around the block I always felt like a dog being taken for a walk. because I always needed David with me and now I am with you.

Me: true you do look like a dog on a leash.

he turned his head to look at me.

Mr Khoza: hai!!

Me: what? you said it I just agreed.

Mr Khoza: I wasn't expecting you to agree though you were supposed to encourage me.

Me: its not everyday where we agree on something don't you think now was the great time.

he didn't say anything he just buried his face into his hands and shook his head. I smiled and continued wheeling him.

- AT THE KEKANA'S -

- NARRATOR -

last night Keisha was brought in the house her parents didn't say anything to her though as they had already gone to bed.

so now it was question time Keisha was seated with her parents in the living room and the 2 siblings were sent away but actually were at the kitchen trying to listen in.

Mr Kekana: Keisha do you have any idea how you almost ruined me my child? huh?

Keisha: I am sorry dad.

Mrs Keisha: you are sorry?? that's all you have to say??

Mr Kekana: honey please calm down.

Mrs Kekana: calm down? calm d..... (sighs in disbelief)

Mrs Kekana then stood up and walked out the living room.

Mr Kekana: Keisha don't mind your mother. tell me why did you run away?

Keisha:

Mr Kekana: talk to me Keisha.

Keisha: dad its just that... dad he was a cripple and a monster I didn't want to get married to such a man even if its for money. I wouldn't.

Mr Kekana: you ran away because you didn't want to marry Zithulele because he is a cripple and a monster? really Keisha?

Keisha: dad the only reason I agreed to marry him years ago was because he was rich and handsome but now all that is gone.

Mr Kekana: but he is still rich isn't stability all you need?

Keisha: what about my image dad? my kids? no!

Mr Kekana: Keisha.

Keisha: dad he is already married to Tiana so that means the agreement wasn't broken right?

Mr Kekana: that's because they agreed to her taking your place imagine if they refused. this agreement would be broken then what?

Keisha looked down.

Mr Kekana: (sigh) it will take time for your mother to calm down I can understand why she is so irritated. well you are excused.

Keisha stood up going to her room but wasn't aware that her mother was behind her.

as she walked in her mother followed and she got startled.

Keisha: ma??

Mrs Kekana: Keisha! how dumb can you be?

Keisha: ma?

she spoke already tearing up because she was scared her mother would hit her.

Mrs Kekana: Keisha why do you think I presented you to the Khoza family?

Keisha: ma?

Mrs Kekana: ungathi "ma". I made so many sacrifices to get you into that family. and what do you do?

Keisha: but ma I would marry a cripple.

she gave Keisha a slap but Keisha was fast enough to put her hand on her cheeks so the slap landed on her hand.

Mrs Kekana: what? you wont marry him because he is a cripple? Keisha you are dumb. all these years pretending to love that stupid child Tiana because of your father have gone to waste now. I tried giving you the better life but you threw it away and gave it to that hoe girl. stupid child.. you are really stupid.. I could...

she aimed a slap at her again and Keisha already raised her hands to block.

Mrs Kekana: you are really stupid child. you never see the future. nx.

she walked out Keisha was left crying.

- BACK AT THE MAIN HOUSE -
- TIANA -

we were now at the garden looking at the beautiful flowers. I was squatting next to his wheelchair resting my hands on my knees.

Mr Khoza: you are my wife yet I don't know anything about you.

Me: is it my fault? you always shut me down when I try knowing more about you.

Mr Khoza: ok tell me about you then I will tell you about me.

Me: mhm.. what do you want to know?

Mr Khoza: how is your background?

Me: mhm my mother passed away when I was born. later my dad met my step mother who already had 2 kids. we got along very well. unlike other stepmothers she actually loved me she loved me like her own child she was like a mother I never had.

Mr Khoza: that's it?

Me: mhm... there is nothing special about my background its just as it is.

Mr Khoza: I thought you would mention the fact that I came in your life and messed up your life.

Me: ohh yah I kind of forgot that part.

he chuckled.

Me: and you?

Mr Khoza: mhmm.. its getting cold we should go inside.

Me: don't fool me you still have to answer me.

Mr Khoza: answer what?

I looked at him in shock as he smiled wheeling himself away.

he didn't have his gloves on so it must be hurting his hands.

I got up and held the wheelchair.

Me: you tell me now or I will spin you around.

Mr Khoza: haibo you wont do that.

I held the wheelchair steady.

Me: try me.

Mr Khoza: Tiana!

I span him once and almost made him fall. I giggled out of fear as I almost dropped him.

Mr Khoza: Tiana are you crazy.

Me: speak!

Mr Khoza: ok ok I will tell you lets get in the house first i will tell you during dinner.

from his eyes you could tell he was a bit startled.

Me: you better.

Mr Khoza: seems like I got myself a devil.

Me: thanks for the compliment.

I wheeled him in the house.

CHAPTER 6

- AT THE MAIN HOUSE -
- TIANA -

We were in the dining room having dinner. once again Ms Moisa helped with the cooking. I am starting to get the hang of it trust me in a few weeks I will be a chief.

I licked my fingers after cleaning my plate up. and I was making that "mnca" sound with my tongue as I licked my fingers clean.

I wasn't even paying attention to Mr Khoza.

I then took my glass of juice leaned back and drank it.

Mr Khoza was not finished and he didn't even have much on his plate I had a lot yet I finished before him.

I looked at him.

Me: psshhh you eat slow like a baby.

he looked at me then ignored me and continued eating.

I sipped on my juice making that "hrrrrrrrr" sound. you know that sound that most people hate hearing when someone is drinking tea.

I wasn't doing that on purpose I just love doing that when I am bored.

as I was busy making that sound he ignored me at first but after a while he looked at me as if he was about to kill me.

Me: what?

Mr Khoza: would you stop that its annoying.

Me: ohh sorry.

he continued eating.

Me: anyway Mr Khoza you said you would tell me about your background.

he looked at me and reached for his juice.

Mr Khoza: you don't forget huh?

Me: no.

Mr Khoza: fine. as you already know I am the only child in my family.

Me: mhm..

Mr Khoza: My father is the last male born from his family he had 4 siblings 2 female and 2 male 5 siblings with himself.

Me: Nkululeko's father being one of the siblings?

Mr Khoza: good listener. yes. both my parents passed away 4 years ago. first it was my mom she was pregnant and expecting when she went into labour both my mom and little sister didn't make it. my father was torn especially because for years they have been trying to have another child but somehow they couldn't then when it finally happens she doesn't make it with the child. my father felt like it was his fault he felt like he shouldn't have wished for another child. my dad was in a

bad space so I had to be there for him uncle Mngqobi said he would sort out the funeral I was ok with that. about 2 months later I found my dad dead in the house. I ran to him and called the ambulance but it was already too late. everyone comforted me. it is believed he couldn't handle the pain of loosing his wife.

Me: suicide?

Mr Khoza: that's what they say.

Me: ohhhhh that's sad.

Mr Khoza: mhm... and that's it.

Me: impossible you still haven't told me how many grandkids does your grandfather have and your position in the company.

Mr Khoza: and why would you want to know that?

Me: as a gold digger I must know whether my sacrifice to this marriage will be worth it or not I hate competitions.

Mr Khoza: (chuckles) hai Mrs Gold digger try finding that out yourself ok.

me: mxm

I pouted and just drank the left over juice in my glass.

Me: well I will go wash the dishes then have a great night. (I said then already standing up)

Mr Khoza: woaw! sit down.

Me: why?

Mr Khoza: sit down.

I sat down and looked at him.

Mr Khoza: You.... you will be sleeping in the main bedroom from tonight.

Me: main bedroom? wait isn't it your bedroom?

Mr Khoza: correct.

Me: so you are giving me your bedroom? don't you like it anymore?

Mr Khoza: who said I am moving out of it?

Me: (popped my eyes out) I will move in the bedroom with you?

Mr Khoza: why are your eyes popped out like that? you look like a ghost.

Me: wait!! cut. are you joking?

Mr Khoza: I am not. My grandfather will be coming here this weekend to check on me he wouldn't like it if we are sleeping in separate rooms.

Me: ohhhh so that's what it is.

Mr Khoza: what did you think it was?

Me: I almost thought you were falling in love with me. I mean I know I am beautiful and sexy and I am every man's dream..

Mr Khoza: right they always say "beauty is in the eyes of the beholder" even though other people don't see it its ok. what you see is what matters.

I looked at him and sighed. this guy doesn't have peace. mxm. can't he just play along and make me feel good about myself?

Me: whatever. anyway will we... will we be sharing a bed?

Mr Khoza: I can't move so I wont do anything to you.

Me: ohhhh Mr Khoza what are you thinking? I was only asking because I wanted to warn you that I don't sleep straight so I am afraid that I might hurt your legs.

Mr Khoza: (clears throat) yah I was thinking the same thing.

Me: don't lie Mr Khoza.... (smiling mischievously)

Mr Khoza: anyway don't worry about that.

Me: ok so will David also be in the room?

Mr Khoza: no he will be returning to his room tonight.

Me: ok. well as long as you don't have a problem with my kung-fu sleeping positions then I am fine with the arrangements.

Mr Khoza: ok then you can go wash the dishes then you will find me in my room you can bring your own blankets if you want.

Me: wait here I will take these to the kitchen then take you upstairs.

Mr Khoza: trust me your wont be able to. I always have 2 people holding me up to my room and another person following with my wheelchair.

Me: why haven't you adjusted the house to be wheelchair friendly?

Mr Khoza: it has only been 4 months since I lived like this. I haven't had time to do that plus I still have hope that I will be able to walk again.

Me: mhm. yes we must have Hope.

I smiled.

Mr Khoza: go wash the dishes I will go upstairs.

I nodded and stood up. I took our dishes and headed out.

- IN MR KHOZA'S BEDROOM -

- NARRATOR -

David pushed Mr Khoza into his room. he closed the door and wheeled him near the bed.

Mr Khoza: thank you David.

David nodded

Mr Khoza: did you get me a bandage?

David: yes sir.

Mr Khoza: good. please help me wrap it around my face before my wife gets here.

David nodded and went to get the plastic with the bandage inside.

Mr Khoza used to sleep with his bare face when he slept alone but now that he was going to sleep with Tiana he didn't want to scare her off so he wanted to hide his face.

David: here it is sir. are you sure you don't want to show Mrs Khoza your face yet? I mean she is your wife.

Mr Khoza: I am not ready yet maybe in due time.

David: I understand.

Mr Khoza removed his mask. then he gently took out the eye contacts that he had in his eyes.

David took the wet cloth and wiped Mr Khoza's face. then he took the bandage and gently wrapped it around his face making sure to cover his face especially on the left side and then also covered his left eye. now only his right eye was visible.

David: all done.

Mr Khoza: thank you.

David: I guess I don't have to change you right? Mrs Khoza is here now.

Mr Khoza: (smiles) of course.

David: ok then Mr Khoza have a great night.

Mr Khoza: you too. thank you again. only you see me this close and yet you still show me respect.

David: respect is not given because of how a person looks

Sponsored

have a great night.

Mr Khoza: you too. thank you again. only you see me this close and yet you still show me respect.

David: respect is not given because of how a person looks you are a good person Mr Khoza I still don't understand why you like putting your wife down.

Mr Khoza softly laughed.

Mr Khoza: (smiles) am I?

David: even though this is an arranged marriage be nice to her.

Mr Khoza: (smiles) go sleep.

David smiled and walked out after putting everything back including the mask.

- TIANA -

I was holding my big blanket already changed into my pyjamas and making that "shh shh" sound with my slippers.

I got to his room and it was closed. I knocked.

Voice: come in.

I opened the door and saw him sitting on the bed with a bandage on his face. I walked in and closed the door.

Me: can I lock?

Mr Khoza: no need no one gets in without my permission.

Me: ohh.

Mr Khoza: I see you actually brought a blanket.

Me: mhm Slindile always complained about me pulling the blankets at night so I didn't want you to experience the same thing.

Mr Khoza: mhm.

Me: why are you covering your face like that?

Mr Khoza: just.

Me: you look like the mummy.

Mr Khoza: maybe I am.

Me: did you burn your face?

Mr Khoza: huh... no..

Me: you have a scar or something.

Mr Khoza:..... huh.... I have been waiting for you to come and change me into my pyjamas.

Me: you are such a master at changing subjects.

Mr Khoza: my pyjamas are in the closet.

I threw my blanket on the bed and went to his closet I looked around and eventually found them. I took the blue one and walked to the bedroom.

Me: this one?

Mr Khoza: mhm.

I walked to him.

I helped him get out of the clothing he was wearing then helped him into his pyjamas.

- LATER -

- NARRATOR -

It was late at night and Mr Khoza wanted to go to the toilet. he never had to stress before because he would just wake David to help him get to the bathroom but now David wasn't here and he didn't want to embarrass himself by asking Tiana to help him.

he switched on the lamp and looked over to Tiana who was sleeping like a mad person. well she did warn him.

Mr Khoza pulled himself to sit up then slightly moved Tiana's leg away. he then pulled his blankets off and tried getting off but it wasn't as easy.

he pushed his leg to turn. after a while he tried reaching for his wheelchair but ended up falling and dropping the lamp that also broke.

Tiana woke up from the noise already scared that it could be a ghost or something. only to find Mr Khoza not in bed.

she quickly switched on the lamp.

Tiana: Mr Khoza?

she heard some groaning so she hurried to his side and saw him laying on the floor.

Tiana: Mr Khoza are you ok?

Mr Khoza was so embarrassed that he didn't even want to look at Tiana.

Mr Khoza: I am fine.

Tiana: Mr Khoza did I kick you off the bed?

she asked already feeling embarrassed hoping he would say no.

Mr Khoza: can.... can you help me get to the bathroom.

Tiana looked at him then smiled.

Tiana: Mr Khoza did you fall off the bed?

Mr Khoza: I asked for help Tiana.

Tiana: well you are missing the magic word.

Mr Khoza: please..

Tiana: ok.

Tiana got off the bed and hurried to help him up.

Mr Khoza held her shoulders for support and Tiana held him tightly as well. with some struggle she walked with him to the bathroom.

Mr Khoza: just put me on the seat I will take it from here.

Tiana: ok.

Tiana put him on the open toilet seat.

Mr Khoza: you may leave I will call you when I am done.

Tiana: do call me don't try coming out on your own I am your wife anyway.

she walked out.

Mr Khoza then did his business.

when he was done he didn't call Tiana instead he sat on the toilet seat just thinking about the embarrassing moment that just happened.

- MINUTES LATER -

Tiana knocked on the bathroom door but Mr Khoza didn't answer. after knocking for 3 times Tiana rushed in calling Mr Khoza thinking something happened to him.

Tiana: Mr Khoza!!

only to find him seated on the toilet seat playing with his fingers.

Tiana: Mr Khoza I thought something happened to you why didn't you answer when I knocked?

he didn't say anything he just looked at his fingers.

Tiana looked at Mr Khoza and realised he was still dressed.

Tiana: Mr Khoza are you done?

again he didn't say anything.

Tiana walked to him and tried looking into his right eye but he looked away but Tiana got a glimpse and figured that Mr Khoza was crying.

she was shocked. Mr Khoza is crying?

Tiana: Mr Khoza why are you crying?

he still didn't say anything.

Tiana: come ..

she tried getting him up but he pushed her away.

Tiana: Mr Khoza you have to move I am peeing myself.

Mr Khoza looked at her and looked down.

he tried moving by himself.

Tiana: you are such a stubborn person Mr Khoza let me help its faster and I can pee earlier.

Mr Khoza swallowed his pride and let Tiana help him back in the room. but it was only because Tiana said she wanted to pee.

after Tiana sat him down on the bed and helped his legs on the bed she also sat down. Mr Khoza looked at her.

Mr Khoza: aren't you going to use the bathroom?

Tiana: no I only said that because I wanted you to come out.

Mr Khoza: mxm (he looked down)

Tiana: Mr Khoza why are you trying to go through all of this alone? am I not your wife.

Mr Khoza: you are my arranged wife there is a difference.

Tiana: in my books a wife is a wife unless this marriage has an expiry date. does it?

Mr Khoza:

Tiana: Mr Khoza when I was told I would be marrying someone I was angry angry because I already had someone I was in love with and marrying someone who I didn't love was not in my books but to please my family I had to accept the marriage and leave my happiness. when I found out you were on a wheelchair I knew I would have responsibilities as a woman such like to wash you help you to the toilet and many more and I accepted that. yes you ruined my happiness but that doesn't mean I have to turn this marriage into an unhappy marriage. there is a saying that says "when life gives you lemon make lemonade" as your family took me in as your wife let me do my duties. I may not give you love and you may not give me love but the least we can do for each other is help each other and at least be close

friends/close married friends with benefits... no cancel benefits its sounds wrong (shakes head) anyway isn't that better then living a tight up marriage where your helper is your guard? then why get married? to have kids? you can adopt.

Mr Khoza: is it that guy you were looking at when we were at the restaurant?

Tiana: (swallowed then nodded)

Mr Khoza: ohhh. its not late to go back I will tell my grandfather that you.....

Tiana: (interrupted) ohhh Mr Khoza I rather have you insult me then have you sulk like this. it doesn't suit you.

Mr Khoza wanted to smile but held himself back.

Tiana: now I need the bathroom I am coming.

Tiana rushed to the bathroom and Mr Khoza shook his head.

Mr Khoza: did she hit her head when she was born?

he asked himself as he snuggled himself in the blankets.

More New African Novels PDF Downlaod Here:

www.eBooksteach.Com

CHAPTER 7

- AT THE KHOZA'S -
- NARRATOR -

Nkululeko was sitting in the living room typing on his laptop getting business things done as he is the current

acting CEO since Zithulele took a leave to heal due to the accident and with the wedding as well he was given more time to be with his family.

as Nkululeko was busy on his laptop his Grandfather walked in walking with a stick in his hand for balance.

Grandpa: hao Nkululeko kanti ula.

Nkululeko looked up to grandpa and smiled.

Nkululeko: yes Grandpa I am busy with some work.

Grandpa: that's good. business is important.

he said that taking a seat on the couch in front of the TV.

Grandpa: ahhhhh! ohh I even forgot to tell you this weekend I will be visiting Zithulele.

Nkululeko: Zithulele? shouldn't you be giving him and his wife some space grandpa?

Grandpa: what space? I need to check if that woman is taking care of my grandson. he is all I have.

Nkululeko: haaaa grandpa I am here and your other granddaughters and grandsons are here.

Grandpa: all of you are always busy with your own things. Zithulele always checked up on me even when he was the CEO he always made sure to visit me and come sleep over. do you other grandkids do that?

Nkululeko: but grandpa you always tell us to not visit and focus on the family's empire.

Grandpa: don't you think I tell Zithulele the same thing? yet he doesn't listen to me that punk.

Nkululeko had some jealousy boiling in him but didn't show it as he just looked at his laptop and typed.

Grandpa: anyway make yourself useful and go make me some tea.

Nkululeko: ok grandpa I will get one of my helpers to assist.

Grandpa: no I said you go do it. these helpers of yours can't make tea go. go and make it for me.

Nkululeko: (smiles) ok grandpa.

he walked out to make Grandpa some tea.

after a while as Grandpa was watching TV his phone rang and he answered.

Grandpa: halo.

???: Mr Khoza this is Luba.

Grandpa: haaaaa Luba did you find what I was looking for?

???: yes sir. we got some report on the accident.

Nkululeko walked in holding a tray with a cup of tea on it.

Grandpa: good. is there anything you can tell me before bringing the report?

???: not much sir but there are some footages we got hold of we are not sure if they might reveal the accident clearly or not. the building owners say the camera doesn't really capture that far but we can only know when we see it.

Grandpa: good.

Nkululeko put the tray on the table.

Grandpa: these people must learn that no one messes with my grandkids and gets away with it. they must face the law.

???: yes sir.

Grandpa: ok I will send someone to get the report for me or I will get it by myself. don't let anyone lay a hand on it unless sent by me.

???: yes sir.

Grandpa: no one knows about the investigation right?

???: no sir.

Grandpa: not even Zithulele?

???: no sir.

Grandpa: good. he deserves to rest instead of stressing about this. keep me updated.

???: yes sir.

grandpa hung up

Nkululeko: what investigation grandpa?

Grandpa: Zithulele's accident.

Nkululeko: what? I thought Zithulele gave up on the investigation months ago because there was no lead.

Grandpa: everyone makes mistakes there is no way this could be a clean job there must be something something that might lead to another and reveal the truth. and the report will direct me.

Nkululeko: but this will only hurt Zithulele you know that night is his worst nightmare he doesn't like going back to talk about it or anything.

Grandpa: which is why you will not say a word to him. understood.

Nkululeko swallowed and slowly nodded.

Grandpa reached for his tea.

Nkululeko: let me go clean the mess I made in the kitchen.

Grandpa: you only made tea and you made a mess? we have to quickly get you married.

Nkululeko let out a nervous laugh and walked out to the kitchen.

he quickly took out his phone while checking the coast.

he called his mother and his mother answered.

Mom: Nkule.

Nkululeko: ma grandpa is investigating Zithulele's accident.

Mom: WHAT??

- AT THE MAIN HOUSE -

Tiana wheeled Mr Khoza in the bathroom. he was wearing a shorts and a vest and still had his bandage on his face.

Zithu: you can put me in the bathtub.

Tiana: while you are dressed?

Zithu: what are you trying to see?

Tiana: w.....n.... what I am asking is you are going to bath with your clothes on?

Zithu: of course not but once you get me in the bathtub I can do the rest by myself. I can't be fully dependent.

Tiana: right.. right..

she helped him up and gently got him in the bathtub with a little struggle of course.

there was no water in the tub.

his back was facing the taps and the shower head pipe (if that's what you call it)

Tiana: will you be ok?

Zithu: mhm

Tiana: what about the bandage on your face?

Zithu: its ok.

Tiana: and the one on the leg?

Zithu: don't worry my doctor trained me well on this.

Tiana shrug her shoulders and let him be and nodded.

Tiana: ok call me when you need help. ok?

Zithu: mhm now go.

Tiana: ok.

Zithu: and don't dare come in until I tell you to.

Tiana: I wont.

Zithu pulled the shower pipe towards himself as Tiana walked out.

he pushed the little water switch for the water to come out of the shower pipe instead of coming out of the tap hole.

he then opened the tap and water came out of the shower pipe.

- MINUTES LATER -

-TIANA -

Voice: Tiana!!

that was Mr Khoza calling me. I got off the bed and went to the bathroom door.

I opened it a little

Me: can I come in??

Mr Khoza: yah.

I walked in and he didn't have a shirt on. but its not the first time I saw him without a shirt on I saw him yesterday when I was changing him into his pyjamas.

Me: are you done?

Mr Khoza: mhm.

I went to help him up. he had wrapped his lower body with a towel.

I held him up and he held me tight as he got up with my help.

after a lot of struggle I managed to get him seated on his wheelchair again.

Me: I will take these to the washing machine.

I was reaching for his wet shorts vest and undergarment.

of cause I had to swallow my liver to touch his undergarment but I am his wife and if I don't touch his

Sponsored

but I am his wife and if I don't touch his then whose undergarment will I touch?

Mr Khoza: no leave it I will do it myself.

Me: no....

I wheeled him to the bedroom.

Me: lotion yourself get dressed here are your clothing I will go shower then clean up the bathroom ok?

he didn't say anything.

Me: I didn't even bring clothing from my room please call your helper to tell Ms Moisa to bring me something.

he nodded and I went to shower.

- MINUTES LATER -

I walked out of the shower wrapped in a long towel.

I looked at him laying on the bed watching TV.

just to embarrass Mr Khoza a little. he loves Anime and watches a lot of it.

and more interesting fact he doesn't watch the dubbed version he watches the original version where they speak Japanese and have English subtitles.

ok maybe I am not embarrassing him but its just funny to know that this tough guy loves Anime. wow!!

my clothes were that side of him.

and most embarrassing thing is that my undergarments were on top of my clothes very visible. that made me so shy and embarrassed.

instead of asking him to hand them over I went round to the other side and as I climbed to get them he took them and brought them to his side.

I looked at him.

he pretended to look at the TV.

Me: Mr Khoza its not funny. can I have my clothing.

Mr Khoza: oh you are this side I thought I was handing them to you.

as I moved to his side again to get them he put them back to where they were.

Me: Mr Khoza!!

Mr Khoza: oh you are here I thought you were still that side so I was putting them back.

I walked to the other side but he reached for them.

I held his leg to indicate that I will press on it.

Mr Khoza: hai that leg is hurt.

Me: bring my clothes and I wont press on it.

Mr Khoza: all you had to do is ask why you being violent.

Me: hurry!

Mr Khoza: did the teacher forget the magic words?

Me: (sigh) Mr Khoza prince of the annoying land please may I have my clothing.

I said smiling. he handed it to me and I walked back in the bathroom.

the towel wasn't short to the extend that I would be afraid that Mr Khoza would see what he isn't supposed to see. it was long enough.

I got dressed and when I was done I walked back in the bedroom and jumped on the bed on the other side of him.

Me: is Anime nice?

Mr Khoza: haven't you watched it?

Me: I only used to watch it when I was young but it was dubbed in English.

Mr Khoza: oh the ones that used to play on SABC 3? or is it 2?

Me: yah somewhere there.

Mr Khoza: well its much more nicer when its not dubbed.

Me: but you don't hear what they are saying

Mr Khoza: I see the subtitles.

Me: can you even see the subtitles?

Mr Khoza: yes.

Me: with one eye?

Mr Khoza: yes...

I looked at him and sat up.

Me: vele vele why are you hiding your face? especially from me? am I not your wife?

Mr Khoza: still as long as I am not comfortable with you seeing my face you wont see it.

Me: why?

Mr Khoza: The doctor is coming today to check my leg.

Me: you want to play it like that? ok.

I sat on him..

Mr Khoza: hai what are you doing?

Me: we made a vow that said for better and for worse 2 you agreed that we can be friends no best friends and you also said your grandfather is coming this weekend wouldn't it be weird to him that I haven't seen your face?

Mr Khoza: so? I will tell him that I didn't let you see it.

Me: still. I would like to see it. it will suffocate you to always wrap a bandage before you sleep.

Mr Khoza: no.

Me: that or I will be moving back to my room.

he didn't say anything he looked at me.

Me: well?

he sighed and reached for the bandage to unwrap it.

Me: let me do it.

he looked at me and placed his hands down.

I unwrapped the bandage very carefully.

finally after removing the bandage my eyes popped as I saw his full face even his left eyes.

my heart ached as he looked straight in my eye with his right eye.

CONTINUATION OF 7

- AT THE MAIN HOUSE -

- NARRATOR -

finally after removing the bandage Tiana's eyes popped as she saw Zithu's full face even his left eyes. her heart ached as he looked straight in Tiana's eyes with his right eye.

Tiana: c... can I touch it?

she asked as she looked at Zithu's right eye.

Zithu wasn't sure but he nodded anyway.

Tiana slowly placed her fingers on his scar and slowly traced it feeling it with her fingers.

she traced it up and when she got to his eye she traced around it. Zithu's right eye remained fixed at Tiana's eyes taking note of the tears that were forming in her eyes. the emotion was visible.

yet he didn't say anything he let her be.

Tiana continued tracing the scar over and over again feeling it carefully and also examining his white blind eye.

Zithu broke the long silence.

Zithu: until when will you sit on me and feel my scar?
don't you know you are heavy?

Tiana removed her hand and looked at Zithu then she quickly got off him.

Tiana: ohh sorry I just got carried away.

Zithu: is that why you are crying?

Tiana: crying? me?

Zithu: yes you. why? feeling pity for me?

Tiana: pity? no.. why would I feel pity for an old man like you? mxm.

Zithu: old man?

Tiana: yes don't you see yourself? you even remind me of my grandfather.

Zithu: really? your grandfather must have been a looker.

Tiana: mxm.

Zithu reached for his phone and already it was 07:24

Zithu: you already late for breakfast.

Tiana: ohhh I even forgot. and its you.

Zithu: me?

Tiana: yes you made me forget.

Zithu: hai don't blame it on me you the one who was delaying.

Tiana: say no more I better hurry so that you can have your pills on time.

Zithu: and please don't burn my bread till this day you haven't gotten it right

Tiana: its not me its the toaster one look away it burns but when I watch over it it takes time to make the bread brown.

Zithu: I am sure that's not the case.

Tiana: I am telling. I am a great chief. ok maybe almost great. ok whatever I will go ask Ms Moisa to help me.

Zithu: hai don't over work my helper.

Tiana: I promised her that you would pay her for the extra work.

Zithu: hai no one discussed that with me.

Tiana: well I am now.

Zithu: more like telling me.

Tiana: just agree with this one please she is really helping me.

Zithu: you need to be learning not using her to get the job done.

Tiana: I am trying ok its not easy.

Zithu: just admit that you are stupid.

Tiana: me? stupid? just so you know I used to have the confidence of sitting in front seat in a taxi and count money.

Zithu: what does that proof?

Tiana: go to a taxi rank sit in the front seat and experience it you will know what it proofs.

she said that walking to the door.

Zithu: its just counting money even a child can do that.

Tiana: my husband even the top learner at school loose their confidence when it comes to the front seat. its not for the faint hearted.

with that she walked out.

Zithu smiled and shook his head.

he slowly touched his face and felt his scar.

FLASHBACK

just like everyday Zithu was on his way to work.

Zithu is the kind of person who is careful on the road. he respects road signs and always keeps to the rules.

The robots were clearly open clearly giving Zithu permission to cross along with other cars. but as Zithu was about to cross another car rushing in hitting Zithu's car strongly on the side causing Zithu's car to flip over.

the same car was also damaged glass broke and the car squashed in front. yet that car rushed off as if nothing happened.

the scene happened so quick that there was no time for anyone to take videos. the only videos that were trending where of Zithu's car flipped over and the scene of broken glasses and all that.

some people called the ambulance while others called the police. there were people who witnessed the black car hitting Zithu's car and it was said that it was intentional as the car fled the scene almost immediately.

Zithu suffered a lot in the car as his legs were stuck under something and glasses pierced in his skin. he couldn't open his left eye as he was hurt as well. he kept asking for help but all he could do was wait for the ambulance.

surely the accident was meant to kill Zithu but it only left him with a traumatic experience and the permanent scars.

END OF FLASHBACK

He sighed and looked up.

he always wanted to know who it was. he had a lot of questions to ask that person.

Zithu was always misunderstood as rude ignorant cold and strict because of his personality.

yes he can sometimes be a bit harsh

Sponsored

because of his personality.

yes he can sometimes be a bit harsh but if you get to know him you get to understand him he is actually more like a bear.

and since the accident his grandfather told him to never trust anyone because at this moment the enemy can be anyone even family.

although his grandfather said this he only placed his trust on Nkululeko who helped him with the investigation when he was still in hospital and encouraged him to not give up but little did he know.

SOMETIMES THE ONE'S WE MOSTLY TRUST COULD BE OUR BIGGEST ENEMIES.

- HOURS LATER -

Tiana: you can do it Mr Khoza!! go! go! go!

Zithu was seated on the bed as his doctor was stretching his legs and bending them in order to train them.

Zithu kept groaning in pain as his doctor kept treating him but Tiana kept cheering for him as if he was playing soccer and she was a cheerleader.

the doctor put the leg down and went to the other one.

Zithu: Tiana would you stop it you scaring my legs that why they are more painful.

Tiana: just thank me that I am here cheering for you or else you would be crying from the pain.

Zithu: why would I need your cheering? can't you hear that you sound like a horse.

Tiana: well this horse worn world horse singing competition while it was in primary so be honoured.

Zithu: true you the only horse that can sing and talk I guess I should be honoured.

Tiana: Doc how about I treat him? I think I am ready.

Zithu: don't you dare come near me.

The doc laughed and looked at Tiana.

Doc: (smiles) I think you should I mean you are his wife the faster you learn the better.

Tiana smiled walking to him.

Zithu: Doc Doc don't betray me you want me dead? this girl will kill me for sure.

Tiana: its just a treatment I only have to bend and straighten your leg that wont kill.

Zithu: Doc please. (shakes head)

Doc laughs.

Tiana: come here sick puppy let me treat that leg.

Zithu: if you touch my leg.... huh.... I wont let you choose our next outdoor activity.

Tiana looked at Zithu confused.

Tiana: outdoor activity?

Zithu: (swallows) mhm..

Tiana: so.. if I let you off the hook I choose where to go?

Zithu nodded.

Tiana: when?

Zithu: the weekend after this one.

Tiana: promise.

Zithu: I give you my word.

Tiana: can it include going out for the whole weekend?

Zithu: now you pushing it

Tiana: treatment it is.

Zithu: ok ok yes it includes sleeping out.

Tiana: ok!!!!

she said jumping up smiling at Zithu.

Zithu was avoiding the treatment from Tiana because he knew that Tiana was going to use it as revenge for him calling her a horse.

What a couple. will it always be like this? bickering like an old couple.

at that moment there was a knock on the door.

Tiana: I will get it.

Tiana went to open the door and David was at the door.

Tiana: oh David get in.
David: thank you ma'am.

David walked in.

David: Morning once again gentlemen.

Zithu: oh David anything wrong?

David: no sir I just came to inform you that Miss Zikalala has arrived.

Zithu: Miss Zikalala is here? I don't have an appointment with her.

David: I told her to get an appointment she said its about the press conference that is to be done this week.

Zithu: ohhhh yes how can I forget. ok take her to my study I will be there after my treatment.

David: ok sir.

he walked out.

Tiana: Miss Zikalala? who is that?

Zithu: my PA.

Tiana: should I go keep her company?

Zithu: what would a stupid person like you keep her company with? Taxi rank subjects?

Tiana: mxm. I know demand and supply as well.

Tiana pouted as she took her phone and kept herself busy.

CHAPTER 8

- AT THE MAIN HOUSE -

- NARRATOR -

Miss Zikalala was in the study waiting for Mr Khoza.

she kept herself busy with some things on the laptop.

The Study door opened and she looked at the door. Mr Khoza came in with David wheeling him. he had his mask on.

David wheeled him near the table and Miss Zikalala smiled looking at him.

Miss Zikalala: looking healthy I see.

Mr Khoza: yes home is taking care of me.

Miss Zikalala: I am glad. but why haven't you removed your mask yet? is it that bad?

Mr Khoza: the press conference is everything set?

Miss Zikalala: (smiles) I see you haven't changed. well this is the memo sent by your grandfather.

Mr Khoza took it and ran through it.

Mr Khoza: ok it looks easy to follow. I don't have a problem with it.

Miss Zikalala: the shareholders are also worried about the new project that is said to be starting next month.

Mr Khoza: new project? I didn't assign any project.

Miss Zikalala: well there are papers that clearly indicates that you signed the project off and gave it a go ahead. now the shareholders are wondering how you would sign off such a deal without even consulting them. Mr Khoza (Nkululeko) is trying to sway the deal and have it cancelled we don't know how it will go as the client is already fighting with us because the contract was signed.

Mr Khoza: this is a mess.

Miss Zikalala: mhm Mr Khoza (Nkululeko) said he would try his best to talk to the client we can only hope that he speaks through him.

Mr Khoza: could this affect the press conference?

Miss Zikalala: it could but so far only the staff within the company know about this but you must be prepared encase they raise the question.

Mr Khoza: its a good thing grandpa is coming here this weekend we can sort it out before the press conference on Saturday.

Miss Zikalala nodded.

Miss Zikalala: is there anything you will need? suit delivered? special item?

Mr Khoza: no David here will help me with all that.

Miss Zikalala: will your wife be present?

Mr Khoza: Tiana? must she be present?

Miss Zikalala: she doesn't have to be if she isn't comfortable since I am your PA I can go with you and help you with any unexpected question that comes up you know I am the best at controlling the press.

Mr Khoza: true you have helped me a lot before.

Miss Zikalala: exactly and your wife and learn and once she is ready she can step up and be by your side in public.

Mr Khoza: (nod) doesn't sound bad. I will run through the memo.

Miss Zikalala: ok sir.

They meeting continued

- 10 MINUTES LATER -

Tiana knocked on the study door.

Mr Khoza: David.

David nodded and went to open the door and saw Tiana.

David: sir its Ma'am.

Mr Khoza turned to the door and saw Tiana. he gave her the "can I help you" look.

Tiana: sorry to disturb good morning ma'am.

Mr Khoza: its afternoon are you that stupid?

Tiana picked her eyes up and down at Mr Khoza and then smiled at Miss Zikalala.

Tiana: sorry good afternoon ma'am

Miss Zikalala: good after Mrs Khoza.

Tiana: I wasn't sure if it would be appropriate to ask you or to just serve you. but I have brought you some juice. hope you like it.

Mr Khoza: the right manner is to just serve. she is a guest.

Tiana: was I talking to you?

Mr Khoza: I am trying to teach your stupid self some common traits.

Tiana just put the tray on the table and handed Miss Zikalala a glass of juice.

Tiana: my apologies for only serving juice if I knew Mr Khoza gets guests I would have baked something.

Mr Khoza: God knows you can't bake you would feed my guests stones.

Tiana again picked her eyes up and down at Mr Khoza and smiled at Miss Zikalala.

Tiana: I hope you don't mind.

Miss Zikalala: oh no I appreciate the juice. I normally don't even get water when I come here.

Tiana: heartless Mr Khoza.

she said looking at Mr Khoza Mr Khoza didn't say anything.

Tiana: well if you need anything please let me know.

Miss Zikalala: thank you.

Tiana walked towards the door holding the juice that she had brought for Mr Khoza and the tray.

Mr Khoza: isn't that meant for me?

Tiana: was but not anymore

Sponsored

you don't deserve it.

Mr Khoza: but its my juice I bought it with my money.

Tiana: what's yours is also mine. mmnnnaa!!! (she stung her tongue out at Mr Khoza)

she then walked out.

David secretly laughed as Tiana walked out Miss Zikalala looked at Mr Khoza who just looked at the papers.

Miss Zikalala: you seem to be getting along well with your wife.

Mr Khoza: you call that getting along?

Miss Zikalala: I heard a couple that bickers a lot tends to share a very deep love.

Mr Khoza: you read a lot of fictional stories.

Miss Zikalala: don't you love your wife?

Mr Khoza: weren't we talking about business?

Miss Zikalala: sorry I was just worried. I mean a woman who can't cook bake and is stupid? how can such a woman take care of you?

Mr Khoza sighed and looked up to Miss Zikalala.

Mr Khoza: lets get one thing straight Miss Zikalala only I can call my wife stupid and tease her about her cooking skills. you don't get to say anything about her understood? and just to ease your worries she is taking good care of me. satisfied?

Miss Zikalala swallowed and nodded ashamed.

Mr Khoza: I think this meeting is done David please show her out.

Miss Zikalala: no Mr Khoza we still have...

Mr Khoza: I think I have spoken.

she didn't say anything.

without even finishing the juice she got up taking her things and heading out with David leaving Mr Khoza alone in the study.

he then looked at the glass of juice and chuckled remembering Tiana.

- LATER -

- AT THE VILLAGE -

an old granny got out of the door holding on to her stick. she was a very old lady.

Granny: where are these kids?

she asked herself as she looked around towards the sandy street and in the yard but there was no one.

she walked further down to the fielding field and still didn't see the kids she only saw the eldest grandson picking some spinach/morogo from the ground.

Granny: Pakiso!! Pakiso ehhhh!!

the son turned and looked at gogo.

Granny: tlokwanano ngwanangwanaka (come here my grandson)

he hurried to her as he wiped his hands on his shirt.

Pakiso: gogo?

Granny: can you go get me some "taxi"(snuff) at the shop. hurry my grandson

Pakiso: ok gogo.

Granny: hurry ok? and when you see those little ones tell them to hurry back and come eat bona habatsamaile habakgutli bakgutla mantsibuya. habalapi? (when they go they don't come back don't they get hungry?)

Pakiso: ok gogo.

Granny: ok boy.

Pakiso ran into the dusty street barefoot as Granny walked to see if Pakiso is picking the right way and also checked if the Spinach was ok.

- THE MAIN HOUSE -

Tiana was fast sleep on the bed with the TV still on.

she was actually watching something but ended up falling asleep. but who would blame her she always wakes up in the morning to make breakfast so at least she should finish her sleep right?

Mr Khoza was brought up to his room and wheeled to his room.

he doesn't let anyone in his room anymore because Tiana is now sharing a room with him.

David opens the door for him and lets him to wheel himself in the room the he closes the door lightly.

Mr Khoza looked at the sleeping Tiana and smiled.

he wheeled himself near the bed and reached for the pillow. he then hit it on Tiana's face Tiana moved and turned her face to the other side Mr Khoza hit her 2 times again and Tiana moaned in complain.

Mr Khoza hit her again and Tiana opened her eyes and looked at Mr Khoza. her eyes were so red indicating that she was in a very deep sleep.

Mr Khoza: ohhhh the undertaker.

Tiana: do you have a death wish.

Mr Khoza: no.

Tiana: then why did you wake me up?

Mr Khoza: its almost 14:00 you have to make Lunch.

yes they have their lunch at around 14:00 - 14:30. Mr Khoza doesn't take any pills in the afternoon only morning and evening after dinner.

Tiana: you not taking any pills so go grab some bread or something.

Mr Khoza: are you not my wife? you should be taking care of me.

Tiana: are you not my husband? you should feeling pity for me I just slept about an hour ago.

Mr Khoza: sleeping wont teach you to cook.

Tiana looked at Mr Khoza.

Tiana: I am starting to wonder if I am your arranged wife or arranged maid.

Mr Khoza: arranged both.

Tiana: really? couldn't you asked Ms Moisa or one of the helpers to make lunch?

Mr Khoza: no I am not married to them.

Tiana: you are so annoying.

Mr Khoza: and you are so lazy.

Tiana: (sigh) Tiana keep your peace don't let this donkey ruin your mood.

Mr Khoza: (chuckles) I am a donkey now?

Tiana: no actually Donkey's have peace. you are a fly. ula!!

she started moving her fingers around her ears.

Mr Khoza: you look so funny.

Tiana: mxm.

she got off the bed wore her slippers and walked passed Mr Khoza heading to the door.

Mr Khutso: you leaving me here? where is the car?

Tiana: did I bring you here?

she asked then walked out.

Mr Khoza just chuckled and wheeled himself out of the room finding David outside.

CHAPTER 9

- DAYS LATER (FRIDAY AFTERNOON) -
- AT THE MAIN HOUSE -
- NARRATOR -

Mr Khoza was in his study busy with his laptop. he was disturbed by a knock on the door.

Mr Khoza: come in.

The door opened and Josh walked in.

Mr Khoza: Josh?

Josh: Mr Khoza Your Grandfather is here.

Mr Khoza: already?

Josh: yes sir he is seated in the living room and the helpers already took his things to the guestroom to help him settle down.

Mr Khoza: and Tiana?

Josh: Mrs Khoza is in the kitchen with Ms Moisa. they are already preparing Lunch.

Mr Khoza: ok lets go.

Josh helped Mr Khoza and wheeled him out of the study towards the stairs. David was already standing at the stairs.

with Josh and David's help Mr Khoza was carried carefully downstairs and a helper hurried to come down with his wheelchair.

as he got down they brought his wheelchair and he sat down. David took over wheeling him to the living room.

he smiled as he saw his grandfather.

Mr Khoza: Grandpa.

Grandpa: yes you punk. look at you.

Mr Khoza: I didn't think you would be here so early.

Grandpa: why? you didn't me to come here early and miss lunch?

Mr Khoza: (laughs) of cause not.

Grandpa: you stingy little punk.

Mr Khoza laughed.

Grandpa: where is your wife? isn't she coming to greet me?

Mr Khoza: she is preparing to some lunch she will be ok in a few.

Grandpa: oh ok. I see you look better then the last time I saw you. we must have got you a good wife.

Mr Khoza: no Grandma picked a good one for me not grandpa.

Grandpa: how did grandma pick a good wife for you when she is not here breathing with us?

Mr Khoza: Grandpa remember you told me that I would be marrying a lady named Keisha? well Grandma made that Keisha run away so that she can be replaced by Tiana. so don't take credit.

Grandpa: well your grandma is not here to take the credit so I take all of it. she is my wife what's hers is mine.

Mr Khoza smiled.

Grandpa: I see you still go around with your mask on.

Mr Khoza: its more comfortable this way.

Grandpa: for who?

Mr Khoza: for me and my staff..... and Tiana.

Grandpa: has Tiana seen your scar?

Mr Khoza: (nods)

Grandpa: and?

Mr Khoza: nothing.... she is still the same with me.

Grandpa: that's a good thing. now that's a good wife.

Mr Khoza: yah but we never know whether she is really okay or just keeping sane around me.

Grandpa: she is your wife of cause she has to be ok.

(shakes head) nc nc nc. this idiot likes overthinking.

Mr Khoza slightly smiled and looked down.

Mr Khoza: ohh Grandpa my PA came to see me the other day about the chaos that was happening in the company.

Grandpa: yah Nkululeko told me about it but you don't have to stress about it your brother will fix it.

Mr Khoza: its not that. the fact that my signature was used to sign off that project is what is worrying me.

Grandpa: so you didn't sign it off?

Mr Khoza: no I didn't . I was shocked myself when I heard this just few days ago.

Grandpa: I knew there was something fishy about this I know you are very careful on signing contracts and forms and you always let me know when there is a project you want to start. I was also surprised when Nkululeko told me.

Mr Khoza: so someone forged my signature? that's illegal.

Grandpa: focus on your health and let me and your brother sort out the company matters. ok?

Mr Khoza: but.....

Grandpa: no buts... I didn't give you a leave so that you would still stress on the company besides why don't you ask yourself why your signature is there when you are

not the active CEO? and why wasn't your brothers signature there since he is the active CEO?

Mr Khoza: what does that mean grandpa?

Grandpa: (shakes head) I guess educated people can also be stupid hai.

he said as he leaned back pulling his pants up.

- IN THE KITCHEN -

- TIANA -

I am shaking and nervous. I don't even want to go to the living room. I am sure Mr Khoza is bad mouthing me to his grandpa. I am sure he is telling him to expect bad food from me since I cant cook and all the other things I cant do as a wife. I am sure of it.

and with all of that being true how will I face his grandfather? he will surely think I wasn't taught well at home not knowing that my parents really tried but my laziness just took the better of me. now what?

Ms Moisa: all done you did very good today. I am sure it taste great.

Me: Ms Moisa don't say that only to make me feel better we both know I suck at cooking.

Ms Moisa: but you have been learning and doing your best. its the heart you put in that counts.

Me: Ms Moisa when it comes to food no one wants to know how much of the heart you put in the food when the food tastes bad

Sponsored

when the food tastes bad its bad and that's it.

Ms Moisa: you are just stressing to much.

Me: already Mr Khoza teases me about my cooking. now his grandfather will know and tease me then he will go and tell the other family members next thing the whole Khoza family will know that I cant cook.

Ms Moisa: yet its not about the family. if Mr Khoza doesn't mind your bad cooking then you don't have to worry.

I bit my lower lip and pulled a sad face.

I then suddenly looked at Ms Moisa.

Me: can you please taste the food and tell me what you think?

Ms Moisa: mhm.... ok.

she took a spoon and took a little.

she took a taste and looked at me.

Ms Moisa: not bad.

Me: be honest.

Ms Moisa: not bad at all.

Me: really?

Ms Moisa: just go and wear a headwrap and a long dress.

Me: isn't this ok?

pointing at my outfit.

it wasn't anything fancy just a tights long t-shirt sneakers and a beanie.

Ms Moisa: you are meeting your in-law you must wear a dress and a headwrap. its common respect.

Me: haaaa!

Ms Moisa: hurry!!

Me: oh..

I hurried out and ran up to the bedroom.

I scrambled in my suitcase and took a dress I have.

before I even say what I am about to wear please know that I love my grandmother and I always appreciate whatever she gave me. and since I am a bit big in size her clothing would fit me but was a bit big but just a bit.

so I had on a long round plaits skirt I put it on my belly to hide my mkhaba and to also make the skirt not so long.

I put on my white round neck shirt and tucked it in my skirt and then put on my knitted jersey that my grandmother gave me.

I didn't take out my sneakers I let them on.

this is my everyday clothing don't think its only for "in-laws" I wear knitted jerseys "polo neck" jerseys 3 quarter slick pants and more. I cant label others because I cant. but that's my everyday clothing.

I wish to wear the crop tops bum shorts skinny jeans and all the other trending clothing but my grandmother told

me to look my body type before wearing anything because some clothing may look good on others but may not look good on me.

I put my scarf as a headwrap because I didn't have one. then headed down.

I went to the kitchen and dished out.

I put the plates on the tray and took the plates to the living room I went to get the juice as well.

I then walked to the living room.

I walked in already looking down.

Me: good Afternoon Mr Khoza.

Grandpa: good afternoon makoti. how are you?

Me: I am well and yourself Mr Khoza?

Grandpa: I am well.

Mr Khoza: doesn't she look like grandma?

Grandpa: hai you punk does your wife look old?

Mr Khoza: ohhh difference is that grandma was very beautiful and didn't have those pimples on her face.

his grandfather hit him with a pillow and I secretly laughed.

yes I have pimples on my face actually to be specific they are only on my forehead I don't know why.

then my body is full of black spots. not a lot but yah they are everywhere. when I wear short sleeve you see them even on my arms.

but my grandma always said its because I am special. (smiles) no I don't have superpowers I am human and human do have pimples and black spots if you don't have them then don't judge those who have.

Me: I came to inform you that lunch is ready.

Grandpa: ohhh about time. my stomach was doing that "grrrr" sound already

Mr Khoza: I always tell you never to miss breakfast.

Grandpa: I only worry about the morning news I never care about breakfast its a white man thing.

Mr Khoza: (shakes his head)

I went to where Mr Khoza was and helped him to the dining room.

CONTINUATION OF 9

- AT THE MAIN HOUSE (DINING ROOM -
- TIANA -

Mr Khoza his grandfather and I were seated around the table having our lunch. well it wasn't as bad as I thought it would be it was ok.

Because today we are dining with Mr Khoza's grandfather I figured it wouldn't be proper to eat using my hands so I was eating with a spoon.

Mr Khoza: ohhh I didn't know you knew how to use a spoon.

he said smiling at me.

I gave her a death stare.

Grandpa: Zithu stop teasing makoti.

Mr Khoza: I am not grandpa I am really shocked.

I let him be and looked at my food. don't worry I will get him.

Grandpa: makoti.

I looked at Grandpa.

Me: Mr Khoza?

Grandpa: hai call me grandpa you are family now.

Me: I am sorry grandpa.

Grandpa: its all ok. (smiles) I wanted to ask you if you keep contact with your family?

I looked down and swallowed. Mr Khoza looked at me.

Grandpa: you don't ?

Me: (still looking down) No grandpa I haven't called them.

Grandpa: why? don't you want to know how they are doing?

Me:.....

Grandpa: back in the days arranged marriages were very common its not that we are selling you or shoving you

away but its a way to combine 2 families together and form a bond. you and Zithu are the connection putting the Khoza's and Kekana's together. now the company belongs to the Kekana's too. isn't that a win for everyone?

Me: I guess it is grandpa.

Grandpa: Family is everything my daughter.

I nodded and just continued eating.

I never called or contacted my family because I had nothing to say to them. what would I say after calling them? where will I start? yes I miss my mom siblings and dad but when I call what will I say?

I also haven't received a call from them. so maybe they also have nothing to say to me. sometimes saying nothing is better.

Grandpa: don't be like this sheep. he just likes distancing himself from the family even his aunts don't know him anymore.

I looked at Mr Khoza who was smiling while eating.

Grandpa: he avoids family events unless its a wedding or funeral. idiot. I hate him.

Mr Khoza: I know you love me grandpa.

Grandpa: ohh I hate you more then anything I hated you from the day I knew you didn't like tomato source.

Mr Khoza: Grandpa!!!

I smiled looking at Mr Khoza looking at Grandpa who was laughing.

Grandpa: ohhh Makoti do you know....

Mr Khoza: Grandpa!!!!

Grandpa: suka...

I was now interested this must be interesting for Mr Khoza to not want Grandpa to speak.

Grandpa: makoti your husband is the worst. let me tell you when he was young..

Mr Khoza: Grandpa!!!

Grandpa: when he was young around 4 years old. he was very forward so one day his mother dished for us and put tomato source in our food. here comes superman with his bowl having a Nike mark on his nose to his cheek coming to ask for the tomato source.

already I was holding my laughter after hearing the "Nike mark on his nose to his cheek".

Grandpa: he knows very well that he wont eat it but he wants it his mother tells him that its tomato source he still cries wanting it. when the mother put for him he keeps saying "faga faga

Sponsored

faga"(put put put) when the mother is done he goes straight to his place and sits down mixes the food with the tomato source then sits there looking at the food not eating it.

I wanted to laugh I wanted to laugh so much and fall of my chair but because an elder is here I had to take out only a few percentage of my laughter out.

Me: ohhh Mr Khoza.

Grandpa: I am telling you.. did you know that he is afraid of Spiders?

I looked at Mr Khoza with my mouth open.

Grandpa: (laughs) oh yes he is... if he sees one now he will jump out of that wheelchair and by the miracle of God he will know how to run.

I couldn't hold my laughter in I burst out laughing with no control. he looked at me and looked at Grandpa. I was gone. like I was finished.

what made me laugh was Grandpa saying Mr Khoza would jump out of the wheelchair and run. I just happened to picture it and I wish I didn't because now its playing over and over in my imagination and I can't stop laughing.

my stomach is even sore now and don't even mention my tears its raining in here. one might think I am crying.

hai nyeke.

- AT THE KEKANA'S -

- NARRATOR -

Slindile was sitting on the couch with the TV on but she was looking at the WhatsApp message she just sent to Tiana.

Jay and Keisha walked in laughing.

they both looked at Slindile who was looking fixed at her phone.

Keisha looked at jay and pointed to the phone using her eyes. jay looked at Slindile again and looked at Keisha he pointed at Slindile slightly using his head and Keisha nodded.

Jay put the packet of snacks he was holding and quickly grabbed Slindile's phone and ran away but Slindile didn't run after him she just looked at him.

Slindile: hai wena if you don't want to die bring my phone now.

Jay: ohh who are you chatting too? did you get dumb?

Slindile: Jay I will count up to 3.

Jay: mhm.... Bandile?

Slindile: 1

Keisha: Jay ayeye.

Slindile: 2

Jay: 3.

Jay quickly returned the phone to Slindile.

Jay: are you worried about Tiana?

Slindile: non of your business.

Keisha: why do you ask jay?

Jay: she sent her a message.

Keisha: what did it say?

Jay: she was just asking her if she is ok but Tiana hasn't responded.

Slindile: I see you skipped crèche. nx.

Jay looked at Keisha and secretly laughed but Keisha just smiled.

- AT THE COMPANY -

The boardroom was filled with shareholders and important head managers of the company. they were all seated waiting to hear the update about the mess that was recently created. everyone is hoping that this matter could be solved within the company and not go out of the company because if it does it may create a lot of troubles for the company and the finances of the company.

Nkululeko walked in the boardroom with Miss Zikalala.

he made his way to the front and started by greeting everyone present.

Nkululeko: we are gathered today to discuss the matter at hand which is the project that my brother Zithulele Khoza signed. we all know that my brother has been in an accident months ago and has only being discharged for a few months. his head is not a right place so for all we know he could have been tricked into signing that project.

there was some commotion as some didn't believe Mr Khoza would be someone who can be easily tricked.

Nkululeko: I understand that having this project done next month may give the company pressure and a lot of estimated damages therefore I Nonkululeko Khoza will take the necessary steps to make sure that the company is protected.

The meeting went on. Shareholders asked questions and he answered but one thing he promised was to turn this whole mess around.

???: will Mr Khoza come and address this matter as well? we would like to hear from him.

Nkululeko: once he is ready he will come and address it but for now he left this company and every issue to me.

- LATER (EVENING) -
- AT THE MAIN HOUSE -

TV: that's why you have a round belly like a buffalo.

Grandpa laughed very hard sitting on the couch. Mr Khoza was also laughing. he was also seated on the couch near his grandpa and his wheelchair was near the couch on the side.

Zithu: that round buffalo belly looks just like yours grandpa.

Grandpa: hai this is my pregnancy this. the whole black label stock is here. what does that song say? stocko stocko!

Zithu: I wont tell you.

Grandpa: yah as long as you got it. Stocko stocko..

he said that rubbing his belly. Mr Khoza laughed.

Grandpa: where is makoti? I am sure she will tell me.

Mr Khoza: oho road block that one.

he reached for his phone and dialled David.

David didn't have to answer he just knew that when Mr Khoza calls he is looking for him.

Mr Khoza: Grandpa can you please get me on my wheelchair

Grandpa: where are you going?

Mr Khoza: I am going to look for your precious makoti.

Grandpa: ohhhhh look at you. I told you you would grow to love her.

Mr Khoza: Grandpa the wheelchair.

Grandpa smiled heading to get the wheelchair and help him to sit on it.

David walked in just after Grandfather was done helping Mr Khoza.

David: sir?

Mr Khoza: where is Tiana?

David: last time I saw her she was making her way to the bedroom.

Mr Khoza: when was that?

David: about an hour ago.

Mr Khoza: mhm... please take me to my room.

David: yes sir.

After a while Mr Khoza was taken to his room. he walked in and saw Tiana sleeping peacefully.

he wheeled himself towards the bed and got a closer look at Tiana.

he found himself scanning her face.

she had her cheeks squashed against the pillow making her mouth open and form a funny shape.

M Khoza: Stupid girl you can't even sleep. how useless can you be?

he said that smiling at her.

CHAPTER 10

- NEXT DAY -
- AT THE MAIN HOUSE -
- TIANA -

I reached for his black top suit and helped him wear it.

Me: there you go perfect.

Mr Khoza: of cause it would be perfect I mean I am Gods perfect creation.

Me: mxm more like Gods worst creation. biggest mistake.

Mr Khoza: haibo you just said now that I am perfect.

Me: I was brushing you but look at you already acting like a shiny shoe.

Mr Khoza: whatever.

Me: anyway are you sure about the mask?

Mr Khoza: mhm..

Me: Mr Khoza sooner or later you will have to stop wearing the mask and let the world see your face. it doesn't matter how much people will judge you or call you names but its all about us living us.

Mr Khoza: I am very comfortable in my mask.

Me: I even noticed you have 3 different ones.

Mr Khoza: mhm I am planning on getting more.

Me: you should get the one like that guy from a Sesotho show. what's it called? where he calls Lesilo.

Mr Khoza: (laughs) you also know that show?

Me: yah My mother is sotho and she loved it.

Mr Khoza: I forgot his name but I remember it.

Me: yah you should a thing like that it would definitely look good on you.

Mr Khoza: then I will get a phone watch and whenever I want to see you I will call you and say 'Lesilo izala'

I looked at him with my mouth open.

Me: so you are saying I am Lesilo?

Mr Khoza: (laughs) no I was only making an example hao.

Me: Mr Khoza.

Mr Khoza: I didn't compare ok but if the shoe fits then ok.

Me: I will buy you the batman mask and throw your other masks away.

Mr Khoza: you would die.

Me: wouldn't you want to save the world.

Mr Khoza: no thank you.

Me: thinking about it children will think you are a superhero with the mask.

Mr Khoza: its good that they think like that. I would like the attention.

Me: (shakes head) well as long as they don't find out that Mr Superhero is scared of spiders.

Mr Khoza: don't start with me.

Me: insy winsy spider climbing up the wall down the rain and washed the spider out.

Mr Khoza: yah don't sing that song.

he was looking at me with his eye wide.

Me: don't tell me you are even scared of hearing the word "Spider"?

Mr Khoza: no don't you know there is a horror movie about that song? it reminds me of that movie don't sing it.

Me: (looks at him surprised) not only are you afraid of spiders you also afraid of horror?

Mr Khoza: I am sure you also afraid of them don't act innocent.

Me: I love them.

he looked at me as I smiled.

I then widened my eyes and walked towards him singing insy winsy spider again.

Mr Khoza: Tiana I am not joking stop it!!

he looked really afraid.

I fell on the bed laughing so hard that I even ended on the floor.

Mr Khoza: you are so annoying.

he wheeled himself out of the room as I continued laughing.

Me: Mr Khoza!!

he turned to me.

Me: knock them dead.

he shook his head and walked out.

I laughed and shook my head.

a man? scared of horror movies and spiders? hai!!

I stood up and started cleaning our room.

- AT THE PRESS CONFERENCE -

- NARRATOR -

Mr Khoza arrived at the venue and was helped out of the car by non other then his personal helper David.

after being taken out of the car David wheeled him towards the entrance.

already from outside the cameras were getting camera shots of Mr Khoza being taken out of the car and wheeled in the building then when he walked in he met even more people settled down flashing lights at him and piercing him with eyes.

Miss Zikalala showed up looking stunning. long dress with a long slit open exposing her long legs and heels that postured her calfs well. you could swear she was a model very structured body.

she let her weave free with a clip on the side to avoid it coming in the face.

Miss Zikalala: Mr Khoza you are here.

Mr Khoza nodded while keeping his face serious as he looked around the room.

the eye contact he puts on help people not to realise that his eye is actually blind when he has his mask on. so basically his mask hides the scar and the contacts hide the white eye. he wears the colour contacts in both eyes so that his eyes are identical.

Miss Zikalala took over and wheeled Mr Khoza to the table.

they settled well in the table and Mr Khoza looked at the reporters.

His tablet was placed on the table with his speech ready

Sponsored

you are here.

Mr Khoza nodded while keeping his face serious as he looked around the room.

the eye contact he puts on help people not to realise that his eye is actually blind when he has his mask on. so basically his mask hides the scar and the contacts hide the white eye. he wears the colour contacts in both eyes so that his eyes are identical.

Miss Zikalala took over and wheeled Mr Khoza to the table.

they settled well in the table and Mr Khoza looked at the reporters.

His tablet was placed on the table with his speech ready done by his PA and double checked by Grandpa.

He started by greeting then started his speech.

- AT THE MAIN HOUSE -

Tiana was in the bedroom when her phone rang. she attended to it and it was Slindile.

Tiana: Slindile?

Slindile: hi Stranger.

Tiana smiled.

Tiana: I saw your message yesterday. but you had deleted it so I didn't know what you said so I couldn't respond.

Slindile: its ok. my question was dumb so I deleted it.

Tiana: ohh.

Slindile: we miss you.

Tiana: I miss you guys too. how is mom and dad?

Slindile: mom is being weird but I guess its because she misses you but doesn't want to admit it and dad well he is a busy man.

Tiana: yah he is.

Slindile: and we are also fine.

Tiana: oh sorry I was going to ask.

Slindile: why are you talking to me like I am a stranger? where is that carefree little sister I know?

Tiana: she is still here I am just nervous that's all.

Slindile: we should go out sometime. maybe get some marriage advices from you.

Tiana: (soft laughs) yah... maybe.

Slindile: oh here I go again. I am sorry. I don't even know how the marriage is going but already asking for advice. forget I said that.

Tiana: really its ok.

Slindile: is..... is Mr Khoza treating you well?

Tiana: mhm...

Slindile: do... what.... nvm its fine.

Tiana: do you want to ask about Jamal?

Slindile: its ok you don't have to answer me.

Tiana: I don't know how he is. but I do know that I feel sorry for him. I feel guilty for breaking his heart trust and love. I feel stupid.

Slindile: don't worry lil sister life is not always perfect but we have to try to make it a happy place.

Tiana: I know...

they continued talking on the phone.

- AT THE PRESS CONFERENCE -

???: Mr Khoza you said that you would be resuming as the CEO soon does that mean your brother will have no issue with the company anymore?

Mr Khoza: my brother will always be involved in the company its our company and together we can make it better.

???: Mr Khoza do you think you are physically and mentally really to start leading such a huge company again?

Mr Khoza: I have my brother my grandfather Miss Zikalala and my wife to support me. so yes I think I am ready.

???: Mr Khoza this may be out of topic but will we be seeing the little Khoza's soon?

Mr Khoza: if you knew the question is out of topic why ask the question anyway?

some reporters while other just looked at the poor reporter who asked that question.

???: Mr Khoza we know that with the accident happening then the wedding I am sure there are a lot of things happening in your life. but I was to ask do you think the decision to get married at that time was the best decision?

Mr Khoza ran memories of the wedding in his head and some moments with Tiana at home.

Mr Khoza: there is never a right time for anything but when it happens the big question is are we happy?
???: well Mr Khoza is Mr and Mrs Khoza happy??

he thought deep about it as he looked at his tablet giving the reporters a few seconds of silence.

Miss Zikalala could see that Mr Khoza was somehow disturbed by the question so she stepped in.

Miss Zikalala: we apologise to end this conference like this we will cut the question right here. Mr Khoza has to go. Thank you everyone.

The reporters shouted questions while taking pictures and trying to come closer to Mr Khoza.

Mr Khoza was still thinking about that question when he was wheeled to the car.

they helped him in the car.

Miss Zikalala was eagerly waiting for a "thank you" for saving him right there but Mr Khoza was lost in his own world.

David got in the car after putting Mr Khoza's wheelchair in the boot.

he then drove away.

Mr Khoza: David?

David: yes sir?

Mr Khoza: take me to Bergbron park.

Bergbron park was the closest park to where he lived. it was a quiet park but some families go there for some picnic or family day.

he always dreamed of bringing his family here one day and have fun run around his kids and be able to put them on his shoulders.

he always found peace in this park.

after his run he would come here just to breath. when he is stressed he came here. ever since he moved here to live away from his family this park became his free spirit place.

the car arrived and David helped him out and put him on his wheelchair.

he wheeled him to the park and there was a family at the park. a mother father and 3 kids.

they were having fun they were enjoying themselves.

he sat there on his wheelchair looking at them.

he smiled looking at them laughing and having fun. he then thought about the reporters question again. he then looked to the sky and asked himself.

" is Tiana happy? "

CHAPTER 11

- NEXT DAY (SUNDAY AFTERNOON) -
- AT THE MAIN HOUSE -
- NARRATOR -

Tiana: have a safe trip Grandpa

Grandpa: will do my daughter.

Mr Khoza: finally my house will have peace again you and Tiana have been teasing me all weekend.

Grandpa: oh I know you will miss me. and Makoti when he starts teasing you call me I have 1 million things you can tease him about. the spider is nothing.

Tiana laughed.

Tiana: will do grandpa.

Grandpa: I might come with our family album next time I come so that you can see his baby pictures.

Mr Khoza: Grandpa do that and I will resign from being the CEO of the company.

Grandpa laughs and winks at Tiana Tiana gave a thumbs up and laughed.

Grandpa then got in the car.

Tiana: we will visit grandpa soon.

Grandpa: no don't come I don't have sugar.

Tiana laughed as Grandpa drove out. Tiana waved goodbye as well as Mr Khoza. Grandpa waved goodbye too.

the car drove out and the gate closed.

Tiana: your grandfather is a very calm and funny person.

Mr Khoza: right...

Tiana: you know I have noticed something about you and your grandfather.

Mr Khoza: what?

Tiana: you are the type of people who would love and care for someone secretly without bragging. one might say you don't care but deep down you do.

Mr Khoza: how did you come up with that conclusion?

Tiana: by observing.

Mr Khoza: your observing skills need some improvement its lacking.

Tiana: I think its accurate though.

Mr Khoza: of cause you would.

he said that wheeling himself back in the house.

I just followed behind him.

- AT NKULULEKO'S HOUSE -

Mom: that a clever move.

Nkululeko: what move?

Mom: faking his signature to sign off the contract that clearly states danger then step in to save the day that was creative.

Nkululeko: I didn't do that.

Mom: what?? Nkululeko don't play like that.

Nkululeko: I seriously didn't. I am truly trying to find out who did it because I know its not Zithu Zithu would never sign that contract off.

Mom: if its not you then who is it?

Nkululeko: I don't know.

Mom: Nkululeko I think we have competition if really you didn't plan this and indeed his signature was forged then it means someone is also aiming for what we are aiming at.

Nkululeko: I don't think so mom I just think its either a misunderstanding or he really signed it without knowing. those are the only 2 that makes sense.

Mom: anyway open your eyes and ears.

Nkululeko: ok mom I will call you again tomorrow I have some work to do.

Mom: ok son. stay healthy.

Nkululeko: Thank you mom you too.

Mom: thank you son.

he hung up and sighed looking at his phone.

he reached for the cup of coffee he made and leaned back .

FLASHBACK

Nkululeko: so you are ok with playing along? with a cripple masked man?

Tiana: isn't he a man before the other descriptions?

_____ END OF
FLASHBACK _____

He smiled then took a sip of the coffee.

" Why does Zithu always get the best of everything?" he asked himself before going for another sip.

" that lucky bastard " he said again while staring into empty space.

- LATER (EVENING) -
- AT THE MAIN HOUSE -
- TIANA -

it was late now and we were getting ready to sleep.

Mr Khoza: I need the toilet.

Tiana: ok let me help you.

I helped him to the toilet.

I helped him sit then I walked out.

I was laying on the bed watching TV he was taking long in there. after few more minutes I went to knock on the door.

Me: are you ok.

Mr Khoza: don't come in.

Me: what are you doing? are you polluting the air?

Mr Khoza: Tiana can you filter your words? I am a man and I have an ego ok?

I held my laughter and calmed myself down.

Me: okay!! Mr Ego. let me know when you are done then with whatever you are doing.

Mr Khoza: mhm...

I smiled and went back to laying on the bed.

few more minutes then I heard him calling.

I went to attend him.

he prayed the toilet spray so all you could smell was the spray I guess he was doing number 2. but then what's wrong with that? everyone does that. its nature.

I helped him to the wheelchair then wheeled him to the basin for him to wash his hands then wheeled him to the bedroom. I helped him off the wheelchair to the bed and helped him lay right.

his mask was already off and his contacts. he takes them off when he puts his pyjamas on.

I then put the wheelchair near the drawer and climbed on the bed on the other side.

Me: Mr Khoza can I ask you something?

Mr Khoza: mhm..

Me: since we were arranged to marry and this marriage was never based on love like other marriages

Sponsored

do we behave like friends or couple?

Mr Khoza: why do you ask?

Me: I mean as a man I am sure you wont spend the rest of your life just living with a woman who just takes care of you but not giving you love right?

Mr Khoza: true.

Me: so will you get a second wife? like marry someone you really like?

he turned his head to face me. I also looked at him.

this was something that really bothered me and I wanted to know so that I know what is to happen or what is expected of me.

Mr Khoza: its already damn hard handling you alone in this house what will I do with another wife? dug my grave?

Me: I am serious.

Mr Khoza: do I look like I am joking?

Me: so you don't mind being in a loveless marriage?

Mr Khoza: I mind.

Me: huh.

Mr Khoza: I have lost to you now I wait for you to lose to me.

me: lose to you? how?

Mr Khoza: (sigh) what did I expect from a stupid girl like you.

Me: (pouts) you always say I am stupid.

Mr Khoza: aren't you?

Me: I am not

he always calls me Stupid and I really never had an issue with that because I know he is just saying. but somehow it hit different this time.

especially because I was never a bright student at school.

I finished matric last year and decided to take a gap year to think about what I want to study but I still don't know what to do with my life. I don't know what I really like or what I really want to invest in. when it comes to studies I have always been blank.

seeing other people succeed and graduate always made me jealous and want to go to school but when I think school I just wish to faint and wake up a millionaire. even though Mr Khoza is from a rich family I can not depend on him I must find stability.

Mr Khoza: let me ask you the same question. do you mind being in a loveless marriage?

Me: well as long as I am happy.

Mr Khoza: would you be happy in a loveless marriage?

me: I don't know. but so far I don't see any issue with it as I am living fine.

Mr Khoza: we haven't even passed a month.

Me: well maybe we... maybe we might grow to love each other just like my father said.

Mr Khoza: yah maybe.

Me: so.... because we are already married do we go on like a couple?

Mr Khoza: you are normally straightforward why are you biting your tongue now?

Me: well.. I... ok I mean in terms of hugging kissing holding hands you know being affectionate do we do that too.

he smiled.

how can he smile at such an awkward situation?

Mr Khoza: what do you want to do?

Me:..... nothing I was just asking.

Mr Khoza: well whatever you want to do its fine we are married right?

Me: right..... ok night.

I quickly switched off the lamp and got under the blankets. I was just so embarrassed for having to ask this but I had to because I really didn't know since we mostly talk and tease each other but never had such moments.

I mean its not wrong to ask right? yes we are married but its not the same. we were arranged to marry if it was love marriage then it would be a different story.

I guess he decided to let me be because he also switched off the lamp on his side.

this topic really changed the mood to an awkward one how I wish I could fall asleep now.

CHAPTER 12

- DAYS LATER -
- THE MAIN HOUSE -

- TIANA -

Me: Mr Khoza!!!

I said pouting and blinked my eyes like a begging puppy.

Mr Khoza: NO!!

Me: please!

Mr Khoza: never!

Me: but you gave me your word.

Mr Khoza: (sigh) come on Tiana out of all the outings you can choose from you chose the Village?

Me: its fun plus I miss my grandmother I last visited her last year.

Mr Khoza: well you can just bring her here.

Me: what about the kids?

Mr Khoza: they can all come here.

Me: even the chickens?

Mr Khoza: what chickens?

Me: the ones that Grandmother has.

Mr Khoza: she lives with alive chickens?

I nodded.

Me: so they can also come.

Mr Khoza: are you visiting your grandmother or the chickens?

Me: both.

Mr Khoza: you must be kidding me.

Me: ahhhhh Mr Khoza don't cheat you said I would choose our next outing for this weekend so I chose. we are visiting my grandmother and we will be staying there for the weekend.

Mr Khoza: haaaaa!!

Me: finish....

he looked at me.

Mr Khoza: Tiana my beautiful smart wife don't you want to the most expensive hotel restaurant or something?

Me: mhm... (pretending to think while smiling) I like the fact that you have finally admitted that I am beautiful and smart good.. you are starting to be a smart husband.

Mr Khoza: I know. so...? a spar maybe?

Me: well... The most expensive place I can think of is.. (pretending to think again) the Village.

he gave the " what? " look like he was out of energy.

Me: isn't it the most expensive?

Mr Khoza: no its not.

Me: and you call me stupid.

I shook my head.

Me: in the villages you get raw organic food. do you know which shop has organic food

Mr Khoza: of cause mostly Woolworths pick 'n pay and other big shops and fruit and veg.

Me: correct now see? my grandmothers place is expensive. there is raw morogo spinach beetroot tomato sweet potatoes and more. have you even tasted beans with big bones.

Mr Khoza: bones?

Me: yes or idombolo fried cabbage mixed with beef?

Mr Khoza: Tiana.

Me: ohhhhh I am so hungry.

Mr Khoza: (sigh) you know very well that Spiders are everywhere. those things could even be in your blankets sleeping with you at night.

Me: don't worry I will protect you.

Mr Khoza: you?

Me: yes I will make sure no spider comes near you. trust me.

I raised my fingers crossing them.

Mr Khoza: is that place wheelchair friendly?

Me: mhm kind of.

Mr Khoza: what do you mean "kind of"?

Me: well the entrance has stairs but they are not big stairs because my grandmother also hates stairs its just 2 steps.

Mr Khoza: well I can't even take a step.

Me: Pakiso is there and you have me. you wont struggle.

Mr Khoza: Tiana!

Me: please...

someone knocked on the door.

I looked at him.

Me: think about it.

I then stood up and went to open the bedroom door.

it was Josh.

Me: Josh.

Josh: yes Mrs Khoza is Mr Khoza busy?

I looked at Mr Khoza as he wheeled himself to the door.

I opened the door wider to reveal him.

Mr Khoza: is something wrong Josh?

Josh: no sir your brother is here to see you

Mr Khoza: Nkululeko?

Josh: yes sir.

Mr Khoza: ok lets go.

Josh held his wheelchair heading to the stairs and with Josh and David's helped they held him down the stairs I walked behind holding the wheelchair.

they arrived down and sat on the wheelchair.

I looked at him.

Me: these stairs are 10 times worse then the one where my grandmother stays.

he just looked at me and wheeled himself to the living room.

- NARRATOR -

Mr Khoza arrived in the living room and found Nkululeko sitting there watching TV.

Mr Khoza: Mr CEO!

Nkululeko: yebo little one.

Mr Khoza laughed.

Nkululeko: how are you keeping up?

Mr Khoza: one day at the time.

Nkululeko: ohhh yazi this mask has even started to suit you. its like a part of you now.

Mr Khoza: you think? (laughs)

Nkululeko: you seem to be smiling a lot lately? I love seeing you like this.

Mr Khoza: I know. my depressed days are over.

Nkululeko: wife?

Mr Khoza: you think its because of her?

Nkululeko: maybe. I don't know (smiles)

Mr Khoza: (sigh) yah neh..anyway how is the company going? I heard about the whole chaos.

Nkululeko: yah I tried getting to the bottom of things I spoke to the client and our lawyers are also checking for loopholes.

Mr Khoza: I trust you man I trust that you will be able to get to the bottom of this and find out more.

Nkululeko: of cause I will. anyway I was watching your Press conference meeting the other day

Sponsored

you did great.

Mr Khoza: you think?

Nkululeko: I know. I was just shocked that you couldn't answer the last question.

Mr Khoza: well I couldn't answer for others I only had an answer for myself.

Nkululeko: may I ask what the answer was? of yourself?

Mr Khoza:..... big brother I think I am happy.

Nkululeko: think?

Mr Khoza: yah.. I am..... happy..

Nkululeko: so the arranged marriage worked in your favour? that's rare. most arrange marriages never get to this point so early then later on the husband would get another wife.

Mr Khoza: another wife? nah Tiana is already hands full trouble I don't need more trouble.

Nkululeko: maybe its because Tiana is the only one you see often. you don't go out you don't meet people how will you know that what you are feeling is love?

Mr Khoza: did I mention love? I just said I was happy. that's all.

Nkululeko: so you don't love her?

Mr Khoza: I don't know..

Nkululeko: what can you say about Tiana?

Mr Khoza: she is annoying stupid irritating and all others the list is long. but... my day gets really dull when she sleeps and leaves me awake alone in the house.

Nkululeko: I can't believe my boy is in love.

Mr Khoza: I never said I was ...

Nkululeko: (interrupted) whatever whatever. you may call it anything you want but we call it love.

Mr Khoza smiled and looked down.

Nkululeko: she is your wife anyway so love is just an extra spice to the wedding right?

Mr Khoza: enough about me lets here about you. anyone I should know about?

Nkululeko: you know I am more focused on the company then dating.

Mr Khoza: come on you are old enough now.

Nkululeko: I know. I still wonder why grandpa arranged you to marry and not me. I am also his grandson.

Mr Khoza: that's because grandpa wanted me to grow and take over the company. if only he knew that I had greater dreams then that?

Nkululeko: meaning?

Mr Khoza: I want my own company something I built from the beginning not someone else's dream. I want to start my own life.

Nkululeko: so why did you agree if that's not dream?

Mr Khoza: well family.

Nkululeko: over your happiness?

Mr Khoza: I already said I am happy so don't worry about me. you focus on getting your life together you surely don't want to die alone.

Nkululeko: (laughs) I will start keeping my eyes open.

Mr Khoza's phone rang and he answered.

Mr Khoza: halo!

Lwazi: hai little brother.

Mr Khoza: Lwazi?

Lwazi: ohhh Thank goodness you haven't forgotten my voice. I mean it has been so long.

Mr Khoza: you calling with the south African code.

Lwazi: yes baby I am home!!!!!!

Mr Khoza: ohh boi.

Lwazi: and I am on my way to your house right now.

Mr Khoza: turn around I don't want visitors.

Lwazi: ohh come on. you even got married without letting me know and you telling me to turn back?

Mr Khoza: is it my fault that you didn't know I was getting married? you are the one who decided to be inactive after leaving for Swaziland.

Lwazi: hai man you know when you enter Swaziland the Swazi girls mahn OMG!! if you were me you would also always forget to call home because you would be busy...

Mr Khoza: still haven't changed huh?

Lwazi: I really tried changing Zithu I even went to church. but hai the biggest devil is in church mahn I tell you.

Mr Khoza: you need a strong prayer.

Lwazi: forget that it failed. listen I am going to text you when I am at the gate I am using an Uber ok.

Mr Khoza: you are sick.

just at that time the electricity went off. Mr Khoza saw this because the TV switched off.

he looked at Nkululeko.

Mr Khoza: the electricity is gone?

Nkululeko: seems like it.

Mr Khoza: hai wena Lwazi you said you are coming and now the electricity is gone.

Lwazi: yebo see even Eskom respects my arrival in SA it announces it via load shedding.

Mr Khoza: oho be useful and order some food as you come let it be delivered here.

Lwazi: aight captain.

Mr Khoza hung up and called David.

David sent a text saying he is going to switch on the generator.

Nkululeko: don't you have a generator?

Mr Khoza: yah David went to switch it on.

Nkululeko: mhm.

Mr Khoza: I don't even know how long it will last because its been long since I filled it up. anyway Lwazi is on the way.

Nkululeko: yah I heard you talking to him.

Mr Khoza: why did he come back?

Nkululeko: (laughs) to give grandpa headache again.

Mr Khoza: I wonder if grandpa knows.

- LATER -

Lwazi arrives and makes his way in the house. The food delivery wasn't here yet.

he was lead in the house and as he walked in Zithu and Nkululeko looked at him confused and dumbfounded as they saw him holding 2 suitcases and a bag.

it looked like he was moving in.

Mr Khoza and Nkululeko looked at each other and then at Lwazi.

Lwazi: I am here!!

he said with a big smile on his face.

"sometimes people just don't grow" Mr Khoza said in his mind while looking at Lwazi.

Lwazi is the second last "male" grandson of the Khoza grandkids. there is a total of 5 grandkids of the khoza grandkids.

(you wont be seeing a lot of them in the story because the story only revolves around Zithu and Tiana)

CONTINUATION OF 12

- AT THE MAIN HOUSE -

Nkululeko: well I have things to go and sort out good luck Zithu.

Zithu: why are you leaving so early I already got us food.

Nkululeko: don't worry Lwazi is a eater he will eat for me and himself (smiles) plus I have to fix the issue before you get in trouble or the company.

Zithu: ok better get going then.

Nkululeko: sure. (looks at Lwazi) Lwazi welcome back.

Lwazi smiled and waved goodbye to Nkululeko as he walked out. he then looked at Zithu with a smile on his face.

Zithu: and the bags?

Lwazi: well I was thinking maybe I could visit you know.

Zithu: you mean stay over? didn't you get the memo that I am married now? you can't just budge in like this you could at least have told me.

Lwazi: I know. and I am so sorry I can even apologise to your wife for the sudden visit. just let me stay for a few days please.

Zithu: few days? that's less then 7 days right? because after that its weeks.

Lwazi: ok maybe few weeks.

Zithu: what??

Lwazi: just 3 weeks only 3.

Zithu: Lwazi?

Lwazi: please.

Zithu: grandfather is lonely you know he stays alone with his helpers why not go and visit him.

Lwazi:

Zithu: Lwazi!!

Lwazi: I can't.

Zithu: why?

Lwazi:.....

Zithu: you either tell me or I wont let you stay here.

Lwazi: ok ok I messed up.

Zithu: meaning?

Lwazi: I messed up I got a girl pregnant and now her uncles want to kill me.

Zithu looked at him shocked.

Zithu: you what?

Lwazi: I know it was stupid of me but it happened I wanted to stay and fix the problem but her uncles were not giving me peace they even went to mama's house saying when they see me they will kill me. I had to run away.

Zithu: and aunt Betha let you?

Lwazi: I told her that I am coming to talk to grandpa I begged her not to say anything to him until I have spoken to him.

Zithu: so you will be talking to him?

Lwazi: I want to but you know I will get a good beating before he sits me down.

Zithu: true but what about the girl?

Lwazi: we still talk on the phone I told her that I am going to speak to my grandpa to do the right thing.

Zithu: are we talking marriage?

Lwazi: hai hai hai! only damages.

Zithu: so you don't love her?

Lwazi: Zithu I am tired can you interrogate me next time I need some sleep now.

Zithu shook his head and sighed.

Zithu: follow me.

Zithu turned and wheeled himself to where Josh was.

Zithu: take him to the guest room the one grandpa was using.

Josh: yes sir.

Zithu looked at Lwazi.

Zithu: follow him.

Lwazi: thanks little brother I owe you big time.

Zithu: I am not your little brother.

Lwazi smiled and followed Josh.

- TIANA -

I was in the kitchen making lunch and dancing around.

Ms Moisa wasn't helping me today she was assigned to do something else so I was in the kitchen alone with my phone playing music and me dancing and using kitchen items as mics. yah I always wanted to be a singer but where is the voice? dololo.

yah my singing can only be for my ears and the bathroom only.

" clears throat "

I quickly looked back and it was Mr Khoza.

Me: ohh you startled me.

Mr Khoza: so this is the reason why your food get burned and sometimes not well cooked? dancing and singing instead of focusing on the pot.

I gave him the "mxm" look and attended my pot without saying anything to him.

Mr Khoza: can I talk to you?

he said that wheeling himself closer to me.

I looked at him.

Me: about?

Mr Khoza: mhm... Lwazi arrived today I also wasn't aware he would ask to stay over for a few weeks he messed up and asked to stay here while he sorts out his mess.

Me: mhm.

well I had nothing to say really that person was already in the house and he probably already said yes so there was nothing I could say.

Mr Khoza: that's it?

Me: who is Lwazi?

Mr Khoza: My father's brother's son.

Me: ohhh.

I nodded

Mr Khoza: that's it? ohhh?

Me: what should I say?

Mr Khoza: whether its a problem or not.

me: if I say its a problem and that you should sent him running would you do that?

Mr Khoza: most definitely.

I looked at him shocked I wasn't expecting that.

I then laughed he must be testing me neh ok.

Me: really? ok then I don't want.

Mr Khoza: ok.

he turned wheeling his chair I ran to block his way as I told him that I am joking.

Me: I am kidding I am kidding.

he looked at me.

Me: where you seriously going to tell him to leave?

Mr Khoza: if that's what you would have wanted yes.

Me: (laughs) hai what's the sudden change of attitude I was expecting you to be savage about it

Sponsored

you always are.

Mr Khoza: when necessary.

I smiled looking at him.

- HOURS LATER (EVENING) -

It was late at night and I was in my room watching TV.

I have met Lwazi and he is a very forward loud individual but also funny. after dinner Lwazi wanted to watch soccer so Mr Khoza joined since he also loves soccer.

so I left them downstairs and came to watch my show in here. mina I can't watch soccer shame hai I would sleep.

I remembered to call my grandmother and tell her about our visit this weekend Mr Khoza hasn't fully agreed but its not like he has a choice he gave me his word so we are going.

the phone rang for a while then a child answered.

Voice: halo

Me: halo is granny home?

I couldn't tell who's voice was that but I know its one of the kids there.

Voice: Gogo here! its a lady.

I smiled as I heard some shuffling.

Gogo: halo!

Me: Gogo how are you?

Gogo: who is this?

Me: ahhh Gogo have forgotten your one and only precious grandchild's voice? its me Gogo Tiana.

Gogo: ohhhhh Tiana its you?

Me: (laughs) yes Gogo.

Gogo: ohhhh why has your voice changed like this?

Me: my voice hasn't changed Gogo its always like this.

Gogo: maybe its because I haven't heard from you ever since.

Me: I know Gogo I am sorry. I have always been busy.

Gogo: how did the wedding go? is that idiot treating you well?

at that moment the door opened and Mr Khoza walked in. I smiled and put grandpa on loud speaker.

Me: which idiot Gogo?

he looked at me and saw that I was on the phone he wheeled himself towards the bed.

Gogo: that idiot your dad married you too. I hope he isn't treating you bad.

Me: no Gogo he is actually treating me well.

Gogo: good. I still don't like him though to me he will always be a stranger.

I held my laughter in when Mr Khoza shrug his shoulder asking what he did?

Me: but Gogo he is my husband now.

Gogo: forced husband. your father did a wrong thing by making you replace Keisha I should have let you stay with me forever instead of letting you stay with your father. and I bet its that scary step mother of yours.

I held my mouth as I wanted to laugh. my grandmother never liked my mother (stepmother) they just never got along but my mother had patience for her and tolerated her. my grandmother wasn't secretly hating my mother she showed it to everyone that she didn't like her even to my father.

my grandmother is my mother's mother and ever since my biological mother passed on my dad didn't visit my grandmother a lot but I stayed with her. I only moved in with them after Keisha was born.

Me: ahhh Gogo.

Gogo: yes its true if you were still staying with me you wouldn't be married to some man who doesn't even love you.

Me: but he treats me well and you will see him this weekend.

Mr Khoza widened his eyes and looked at me.

I held my laughter in.

Mr Khoza: (whisper) what?

Gogo: see him do what? I didn't say I want to see him.

Me: we are coming to visit Gogo. we will be staying over for the weekend.

Gogo: coming here? with that husband of yours?

Me: yes granny.

Gogo: well I do need some extra hands around here hurry and come.

Me: we will granny.

Gogo: and tell that husband of yours that here we don't have a 5 star hotel and he should not come with anything expensive because the rats here have family.

Mr Khoza looked with a funny expression that I laughed so much making that window screen sound with my laughter.

Me: yes Gogo I will tell him.

Gogo: mhm and tell him the cockroaches are also our housemates so he should just know that. if he can't survive that he should just stay there.

Me: (laughs) yes Gogo I will tell him.

Gogo: ok my child how is your father?

Me: I haven't spoken to him since I got married.

Gogo: why Tiana?

Me: I will call him when I have time.

Gogo: Tiana at the end of the day they are your parents you need to lean on them for support.

Me: but I have a husband now Gogo.

Gogo: and what if that husband of yours becomes the reason you need someone to turn to? will you still go to him?

Me:

Gogo: anyway call you dad and speak to him ok?

Me: yes Gogo.

Gogo: good my child.

me: ok Gogo let me let you rest I will see you this weekend.

Gogo: ok my baby good night.

Me: night Gogo.

I hung up and Mr Khoza was still looking at me.

I looked at him keeping myself from laughing.

Me: are you done watching soccer? did Lwazi go to sleep?

Mr Khoza: rats and cockroaches?

I couldn't hold it in so I laughed so much that I even released air from my ass.

Me: sorry sorry!!

Mr Khoza: and you are even polluting the air? mhm sies.

Me: sorry!! (laughs) sorry its you making me laugh.

Mr Khoza: if you need the bathroom its that way.

Me: (laughs) mxm.

I lay on my stomach playing with my feet.

Mr Khoza: so you were serious about the Village trip? where there is chickens rats and cockroaches? is your grandmother guarding a zoo? what else is there?

Me: a zoo?

I laughed again.

Mr Khoza: well?

Me: come on every household has cockroaches we also have some here.

Mr Khoza: but she made it seem like they are a bunch of them.

I laughed.

yazi his face was written shock and surprised all over his eyes and face. even with his mask on I could trace it.

More New African Novels PDF Downlaod Here:

www.eBooksteach.Com

CHAPTER 13

- AT THE MAIN HOUSE -
- TIANA -

I woke up very early in the morning due to pains. it must be that time of the month I normally don't know when my cycle starts I never keep track of it I just get alerted by the pains or the sudden uncomfortable motion in my stomach.

I slowly get up.

every time I start Slindile would be the one to help me she would let me go to the toilet while she prepares hot water for me in a 2 litter bottle and also gets me Anadin (pills) from the nearby shop.

I always hear that neurofens help with period pains but Anadin also helps from my experience but problem is it takes time before it kicks in.

she always helped me but now she wasn't here and I don't think Mr Khoza would help me I have to get Ms Moisa to help me.

I switch on the lamp and first thing is to check the bedding.

well there was a tiny spot on Mr Khoza's grey bedding once Mr Khoza gets up I have to change it and apologise.

I get in the bathroom and sit down.

I sit down while leaning forward with my hand on my abdomen.

- NARRATOR -

Mr Khoza turned his head to face the other side but because of the light he opened his eyes and looked around wondering why the lights were on.

he realised it was the lamp on Tiana's side that was on and Tiana was on in bed.

he looked at the clock placed on the wall and it was still early around 03:40. he looked at the bathroom door and it was closed he then closed his eyes trying to sleep after coming to the conclusion that Tiana is probably in the toilet.

after sometime Tiana flushed the toilet and walked out.

Mr Khoza was still closing his eyes facing up but he could hear Tiana come out of the toilet.

Tiana still holding her abdomen and groaning in pain made her way to her bag to get a pad for her to use and also get a black tights to wear.

as she walked Mr Khoza opened his eyes and looked at Tiana who was breathing a bit heavily.

he sat up as he saw Tiana walking as if in pain.

Mr Khoza: constipation?

Tiana ignored Mr Khoza and took her pad hiding it in her pants then took another pair of black tights and a black track pants.

she walked back and her face indicted pain it also seemed as if she was crying.

Mr Khoza: hai hai hai what is it? what's wrong?

Tiana: I am going to take a shower should I switch off the lamp for you? is it disturbing you?

Mr Khoza: shower? what is wrong?

Tiana: I..... I just started on woman monthly issues.

Mr Khoza was lost at first but was fast to catch on.

Mr Khoza: oh I am sorry is that why you are frowning like that?

Tiana: the pains.

Mr Khoza: mhm... you can take my pain killer pains I don't know if they can work but they are meant for pains.

Tiana: thank you but I will go wash up first.

Mr Khoza nodded.

Tiana walked back in the bathroom and showered. she wished to take a bath but she couldn't.

she got naked and walked in the shower she even forgot to put her plastic on her head. she opened the shower and stood there as water splashed on her.

the pains were too much that she started crying while holding her abdomen.

Tiana has this problem of having very strong period pains on her first day of the cycle they are too strong that she would kick roll and curl while crying just to stop the pain. and now without the pains that actually work she might prepare herself for a long paining period.

Mr Khoza could hear her crying

Sponsored

she might prepare herself for a long paining period.

Mr Khoza could hear her crying yet he didn't know what to do. he felt very useless. he wanted to do something for her but what can he do when he can't even get up and sit himself on the wheelchair?

- AFTER AN HOUR LATER -

Tiana walked out still not looking well Mr Khoza looked at her.

Mr Khoza: hurry and get the pills.

Tiana: is it fine to have them on an empty stomach?

Mr Khoza: oh shoot no you must eat something.

Tiana: ok I will go get something in the kitchen.

Mr Khoza: will you manage? you are in pain.

Tiana: I will manage thank you.

Mr Khoza was seeing a different side of Tiana she was so calm down and that was not a good sight for Mr Khoza to watch especially because he just couldn't help.

Tiana went down to the kitchen to get something to eat.

she took 2 slices of bread and shaft them in her mouth as she walked to the bedroom. she was eating as she walked back. she didn't even care about the bread being dry she just wanted to die and wake up after the pains disappear.

she got to the bedroom with her mouth filled with bread and still a piece in her hand.

Mr Khoza looked at her.

Mr Khoza: where is your food.

she raised the piece that was left and opened her filled mouth to also show more in her mouth.

Mr Khoza: that's all you will have?

Tiana shook her head as she walked towards Mr Khoza's medicine bag.

she gave it to Mr Khoza.

Mr Khoza took out the one he recommended and gave her 2.

Tiana: (mouthful) both?

Mr Khoza: mhm

she sat on the bed and finished her bread.

Mr Khoza: is it very painful?

Tiana nodded.

Mr Khoza: do you need anything?

Tiana shook her head.

after eating her bread Mr Khoza gave her his water bottle he always kept it on the drawer near the lamp.

Tiana took the pills and drank it as she pulled a funny face.

she then drank more and gave it back to Mr Khoza.

Mr Khoza: go sleep now.

Tiana: I made a mess on your bedsheet let me change it first.

Mr Khoza: what mess.

Tiana: a mess. but I will go wash it with

Mr Khoza: is it too much?

Tiana with some embarrassment on her face pulled the blankets to show him the tiny spot she is talking about.

Mr Khoza: I thought you are talking about something big that's nothing just sleep we will change it in the morning.

Tiana: its already morning.

Mr Khoza: Tiana sleep.

Tiana crawled on the bed and faced her back on Mr Khoza she switched off the lamp but it was already getting bright in the room as it was already morning.

Mr Khoza moved closer to Tiana and held Tiana.

Tiana turned and faced Mr Khoza then snuggled on him putting her leg on him.

Tiana: please be my pillow only for today.

Mr Khoza looked at her and smiled.

Mr Khoza: I don't mind... even if its everyday.

Tiana smiled and hugged Mr Khoza as she closed her eyes listening to her pains that were striking and being still.

it didn't even take minutes Tiana rolled away from Mr Khoza and tried a different sleeping position to calm the pain but nothing.

she started crying and crying as she fought the pain. Mr Khoza couldn't do anything all he could do was watch her and feel her pain.

he hated himself for not being able to do anything.

Tiana cried rolled tossed and turned for a few Minutes then as the pills kicked in the pain settled down.

when the pains calmed down she didn't move from that position but fell asleep almost immediately.

when Mr Khoza saw that she was asleep he pulled her close to him and positioned her to lay on his chest Tiana also moved in to a more comfortable position. not forgetting her leg on Mr Khoza.

Mr Khoza held her and looked at her sleeping peacefully yet with dry tears on her face.

"you do a lot for me and I can't even help you when you need me" he said to himself while looking at Tiana.

- LATER THAT MORNING -
- TIANA -

I woke up and realized I was still laying on Mr Khoza. I raised my head and he had his one arm over me.

I smiled as I faced him.

it was embarrassing to have such a moment in his presence but it showed me the soft Mr Khoza. I have never seen Mr Khoza care like that. "Mr Pride"

I smiled looking at him.

why is he so cute when he is sleeping? his scar is also not that bad. it actually reminds me of Scar from the lion king.

yah now I have a name to call him when he teases me. Mr Scar.

he moved to turn his head I quickly looked away because I didn't want him to catch me looking at him.

I looked at him and smiled.

he moved again and this time opened his eyes but I was already pretending to also wake up.

Mr Khoza: Tiana are you ok? did you sleep well?

Tiana: yah. the pains are not that strong now.

Mr Khoza: I am glad. I felt so useless since I couldn't help you with anything I hate myself right now.

Tiana: only now you see? and you call me useless? well seems like we are both useless piece of junks.

Mr Khoza: here we go again.

I laughed but that was a wrong move as I felt as if a huge mess just happened. I hurried to go to the bathroom.

CHAPTER 14

- DAYS LATER (FRIDAY)

- AT THE KEKANA'S -

Mrs Kekana was seated in the living room watching TV.

Keisha walked in and looked at her mother she swallowed and walked towards her.

she sat down in one of the couches but Mrs Kekana didn't even look at her.

Keisha: ma?

she still didn't say anything.

Keisha: ma I am sorry I ran away from home I really didn't know what ma was planning.

Mrs Kekana: how would you know when you think with your ass and not your brains? look at you now. then look at Tiana. she is living the life. doesn't matter if the husband is crippled or a monster fact is her future is set. and then look at you.

Keisha looked down and didn't say anything.

Mrs Kekana: well lets hope its a lesson for next time. I may have lost right now but the game isn't over. I am Kefiwe and I always get what I want. as for you there will be a day where you will have to proof how sorry you are. hope this time you wont run away or do something useless.

Keisha didn't say anything she kept looking down.

- AT THE MAIN HOUSE -

Lwazi was in his room still sleeping.

he was woken up by his phone ringing.

he looked at it and it was Zithu (Mr Khoza)

he frowned wondering (why is he calling me?)

Lwazi: wrong number?

Zithu: hai don't tell me you just woke up.

Lwazi: do you see me around the house? of cause I was just sleeping and you disturbed me.

Zithu: how would I see you around the house when I am not home?

Lwazi: morning stroll?

Zithu: no I am heading to Free state.

Lwazi: what? already?

Zithu: yes Tiana said her grandmother doesn't like people arriving late at night so we had to leave early.

Lwazi: so you are seriously doing this? you Mr CEO?

Zithu: of cause why not.

Lwazi: I feel for you. all those rats cockroaches spiders chickens cows sheep goats hai.

Zithu: where do the goats and sheep come in now?

Lwazi: didn't you know? in the Villages you sleep alone you wake up to a cow licking your face like your some grass.

Zithu: you talking nonsense.

Lwazi: I am telling you mahn. plus its free state I am sure horses are a lot there too.

Zithu: you know what bye!

Lwazi: wait!!

Zithu: what? more animals to warn me about?

Lwazi: no. just an advice

Zithu: what?

Lwazi: start training your hands it doesn't matter that you can't walk as long as you have hands you will be given work to do.

Zithu: at least they wont pity me.

Lwazi: even cutting a chickens neck while alive.

Zithu: WHAT!!

Lwazi: bye!! enjoy your trip.

Lwazi hung up smiling and pulled the blankets over him.

- SOMEWHERE ON THE ROAD -

Mr Khoza hung up and looked at Tiana who was looking outside through the car window.

Zithu: Tiana

Tiana: mhm.

she turned and looked at Zithu.

Zithu: is there any animals you haven't told me about?

Tiana: like?

Zithu: cows goats and sheep maybe?

Tiana: (laughs) well they are not in the yard.

Zithu: so they are there?

Tiana: (laughs) relax.. you will only see them once in a while when their owners are taking them to their herds or something but you will mostly see cows as for sheep and goats its not as common as cows.

Zithu: I can't believe this. so basically its a whole zoo?

Tiana: (laughs)

Zithu put his hands together and closed his eyes.

Zithu: dear lord I will start going to church can you please bring me back in one peace.

Tiana laughed

Tiana: you are so funny.

Zithu: I am glad you think this funny when I am very serious here.

Tiana: you are just being a drama king

Sponsored

there are so many people living in the villages why don't they get eaten or hurt by these animals?

Zithu: they are citizens of the Village they grew up there with me its different these animals will smell me from far and conclude that I am a foreigner.

Tiana burst out laughing and David also smiled overhearing their conversation.

- LATER -

The car slowly drove into the road that was filled with stones.

it drove in as Tiana directed which road to take to get to where granny lives.

you might be asking yourself "why is Tiana's grandmother in Free state?" well this grandmother is Tiana's biological mother's mother. Tiana's mother was a Sesotho speaker.

The car arrived at the gate and the kids in the yard were now standing still looking at the car wondering who it was.

one kid ran in the house to call Granny as Tiana got outside of the car and walked to the gate.

as she got to the gate Pakiso appeared at the gate and already a smile was formed on his face.

Pakiso: nkgunu ke Mami. (granny its Mami)

that was her nickname.

Tiana: how are you Paki?

Pakiso: ai ke grand. wena? (I am fine and you?)

Tiana: shap shap.

Pakiso: you don't even invite me when you get married.

Tiana: I am sorry it was a sudden wedding I couldn't invite anyone dad was the one who was inviting.

Pakiso: look at you. you gained weight is happy relationship weight?

Tiana: wabona moss. please open the gate before my husband skin me alive.

Pakiso: I am so eager to meet him.

Tiana: don't have expectations.

Pakiso: I just know he is rich will he be fine here?

Tiana laughed as she held the gate that Pakiso opened and the car drove in.

Tiana: he was already complaining about cows.

Pakiso laughed.

the car parked and granny came out.

Granny: hao Mami you have arrived?

Tiana: yes Gogo.

Granny: where is stranger?

Tiana: in the car.

Granny: does he know that vula mlomo is 6 packets of snuif?

Tiana: Gogo!!

Pakiso laughed.

David came out.

Tiana: let me go help my husband.

Tiana went to open for Zithu and Zithu looked at her.

Zithu: what are you doing?

Tiana: taking you out David is bringing your wheelchair.

Zithu: hai I am going back home.

Tiana: hai we are already here you can't bail out.

Zithu: I clearly wont survive till Sunday here. look at your grandmother's face its like she might hit me. she looks strict and scary.

Tiana: if you don't get out now she might come get you herself thinking you are looking down on her.

Zithu: really?

Tiana nodded.

Tiana: she hates rich people who look down on poor people or their houses. and when she meets one she turns to be a very scary granny?

Zithu was now looking at Tiana wondering if he is really safe or not.

David came and Tiana raised her eyebrow asking Zithu if he is coming or not?

Zithu sighed and held the door pushing himself out.

Tiana helped him out and helped him sit on the wheelchair. after that Tiana wheeled him towards granny.

Tiana: dumelang Gogo.

Zithu: san'bonani Gogo.

granny: ohhh so this is the disrespectful son that only visits me now after so many days of marriage?

Zithu looked down not knowing what to do.

Gogo: stranger what is your name?

Tiana: he is

Gogo: did i asked you? doesn't he have a mouth?

Tiana bit her lips looking at Pakiso who was laughing.

Zithu: oh my name is Zithulele Khoza.

Gogo: ohh Khoza. i see. well Tiana here told me that you thought i run a zoo well welcome to my Zoo.

Mr Khoza looked at Tiana and Tiana looked away holding her laughter.

Gogo: i hope he told you to not bring expensive things I don't have money to compensate for things that rats will eat.

Zithu didnt say anything.

David: Good afternoon Gogo.

Granny looked at him.

Gogo: haibo Mami did you get married to 2 men?

Tiana: (laughs) no Gogo this is David he is the one who brought us here he will be leaving us soon.

Gogo: ohhh unalifeletsa?

Tiana: yes Gogo.

Gogo: ohhh well good afternoon to you too. come on in Pakiso come help the gentlemen here to bring the disrespectful son in.

Zithu looked at Tiana again and Tiana laughed making way for Pakiso to walk in.

CHAPTER 15

- NEXT DAY (EARLY MORNING) -
-TIANA-

I was woken up by a consistent knock on the door.

So in this house there are 2 rooms and a dining room combined with the kitchen then the toilet is outside. the shack toilet that doesn't need a flush.

There are 3 kids that stay here my aunts kids. Pakiso being the oldest followed by Lerato who was around 12 years then its the small one who is about 7 years. their mothers and my mother are siblings so like me we are all Gogo's grandkids.

Pakiso and the 2 others used to sleep in this room that we are using but because we came they had to go sleep with Gogo on the floor.

I didn't mind having them sleep with us but Gogo said its not proper since I am here with My husband.

back to the story.

I get up and first thing I do is check my phone for the time. my eyes popped when I saw that it was 04:08. what could be wrong that I have to be woken up so early?

at night Mr Khoza wasn't sleeping well I could feel him move a lot I guess its because this bed feels really old and again or because of the light.

yes my dear husband refused to sleep with the lights off. he says if we switch the lights off the spiders would feel welcomed and come to him so he wanted to scare them off with the light. poor husband of mine. and knowing him he can't sleep with the lights on once the lights goes on he wakes up I wonder if he had enough sleep.

I get up after looking at my phone and went to unlock the door.

as I opened I saw Pakiso already dressed. he didn't look like someone who just woke up and it looks like he was working on something.

Me: Pakiso? why are you knocking for me so early? its only 04:00 do you know how much sleep I was left with?

Pakiso: welcome to granny's house here you don't sleep like you do at your house. Granny asked me to come wake you up.

Me: haaaa why?

Pakiso: you have to go with Lerato to fetch water ko sidibeng.

Me: river?

Pakiso: no sidibeng its where clean water is it never gets dirty it purifies itself.

Me: is there such a thing?

Pakiso: just get out before Granny starts shouting she is very harsh in the mornings.

Me: haaaa mara.

Pakiso: hurry Lerato is already waiting.

Me: ok.

I was so annoyed. I kind of forgot how granny can get. seems like the plan to get Zithu a taste of the village is biting me back as I am also getting the taste of it.

I put on something to wear it feels cold so I put on something warm.

I then wear my shoes and before heading out I opened the curtains and switched of the lights. hope it helps him get some sleep before he wakes up. shame.

I then walk out.

I found Lerato sitting on the rock near the gate Granny was standing outside looking at Pakiso who was busy cutting the grass. ahhhh I think I visited at the wrong time.

Me: Granny? which bucket do I take? this one?

showing a small bucket I saw on the table.

Granny: such a little bucket? will you go 10 times?

Me: 10?

Granny: hai look at Lerato's bucket

Lerato raised it and my eyes popped looking at her bucket.

Me: granny Lerato is experienced my neck will snap.

Granny: let it snap take the big bucket there and go fetch water.

Me: Gogo! am I not a visitor?

Granny: visitor se foot. hurry before your husband wakes up. when he wakes up he must find hot water ready for him to wash and also find food to eat when he is done washing. you kids from these days are so lazy. you hide behind technology but its just laziness. hurry!

I went back dragging my feet with my face showing how annoyed I was. I took the bucket and walked out.

Lerato and I went ko sedibeng (I think its called "porthole" in English).

it wasn't very far but it was far expecially when you have to come back carrying that big bucket of water.

- LATER -

We came back holding the buckets on my head.

I kept making a lot of stops as the bucket was hurting my neck and I was also wet from the water that was jumping out of the bucket.

Lerato helped me put this on my head I didn't even fill it up like she did but the water is splashing me like crazy while she is dry and walking well. now I wish I had more time with granny.

when I was living with her I used to work but not a lot because my aunts were not working and always home so they were doing much work.

we got home and Pakiso looked at me as I walked in.

Pakiso: ahhhh City girl. Never!

he laughed.

I just ignored him as I smiled and walked in the house.

Me: Gogo Gogo my neck.

Gogo: ahhhh why are you so wet?

Me: the water kept jumping out the bucket.

Gogo: I should have given you a tougher hand while you were here. hai.

she helped me get the bucket off my head.

I felt as if my head would fall off anytime. my neck was painful and head was heavy.

Gogo: haibo Mami there is no water moss mo.

Me: mama there is more then half in that bucket.

Gogo: this half is all we will use now what about later in the day?

Me: Lerato's bucket is full.

Gogo shook her head.

Gogo: hai Lerato go and get another bucket

Sponsored

go and get another bucket Tiana wena start heating the water for your husband to bath and prepare another pot of water so that I make porridge. does your husband eat porridge?

Me: I don't know mama

Gogo shook her head.

I did as told then walked to the bedroom to change my jacket since this one is wet. Mr Khoza wakes up around 06:00 to bath and all so that he has breakfast at around 07:00 and have his pills. but it was still early now it wasn't 06:00 yet so I wont wake him up yet.

I walked in and saw Mr Khoza awake.

Me: Mr Khoza you are already awake?

Zithu: can you not call me that while we are here?

Me: why?

Zithu: I had enough lecture yesterday she might find it weird when she hears you calling me so formal its like I am having an affair with my employee.

yes yesterday was hilarious.

My grandmother had them come in then started asking Mr Khoza a lot of questions about us and this marriage

and not forgetting how she would always tease Mr Khoza about being rich and not feeling comfortable here.

yah that's my grandmother for you.

Me: ok baba!

Zithu: do I look that old?

Me: isn't that the most respectful way to address your husband?

Zithu: (sigh) mhm whatever.

Me: anyway why are you awake?

Zithu: firstly my body is sore especially my back I don't think I can pull another night here secondly I am tired I want to sleep but I couldn't because of the fear that a spider would jump on me and it looks like rats really tend to be busy at night. I was so freaked out when I heard them move around and make noise. I was so scared that I couldn't sleep the light wasn't even doing justice these rats have liver they are not scared of the light then lastly the chickens. just when I find strength to sleep the chickens start singing. is there ever peace around here?

Me: (laughs) I am sorry.

Zithu: sorry do you see me right now? I am sure I look like a zombie.

Me: (laughs) no my husband you look like a ghost.

Zithu: see.

I laughed.

Zithu: and wena why are you wet so early in the morning? its like you were playing with water?

Me: I was woken up early to go fetch water at the porthole.

Zithu: like carry a bucket of water on your head?

Me: mhm.

Zithu: there is no tap in here?

Me: no. I forgot that detail.

Zithu: yah like you also forgot to let me know that there is no bathroom here?

Me: I did say that you will be using a small basket as a toilet then throw away the waste.

Zithu: can I ask what was the purpose of this trip? its clearly aimed for you to embarrass me and strip me off my ego and manhood right?

Me: (laughs) no Mr Kh.....

Zithu: you think its funny? huh? its funny??

I realised that he was serious now it wasn't a joke. is he really angry?

Zithu: I hope you are having fun Tiana. well keep laughing ok keep making me feel useless and ashamed because you seem to love it. its not you who sits in the wheelchair its not you hiding your scar so its ok to do all this? its funny?

Me: Mr Khoza you misunderstood I just....

Zithu: what?

I looked at him and there was no trace of "I am joking" on his face. he looked really serious.

Zithu: pack my things I am leaving today you can stay here by yourself.

he reached for his phone.

Me: Mr Khoza wait you really misunderstanding me.

he called and the person answered.

Zithu: David stop whatever you are doing and come get me at this instant..... hurry!!

he hung up and laid back closing his eyes.

Me: Mr Khoza trust me all I wanted was.....

Zithu: (interrupted) please get out. until David gets here don't interrupt me I am sleeping.

Me: w.....what about breakfast? you have to take your pills

Zithu: wouldn't this make you happy? since you like seeing me miserable I am sure you wouldn't mind if I skip my pills.

Me: Zithu!!!

Zithu: out!!

I was fuming he was angry and didn't want me to explain myself does he think its all easy for me??

I stood up grabbing my jacket.

Me: fine do whatever you want I don't care.

I walked out and slam the door.

as I turned I had tears in my eyes Gogo was with Kagiso (the small child) in the kitchen. I am sure they heard our fight. I breathed and looked down.

- MEANWHILE -

Zithu looked at the door after Tiana walked out. he clenched his jaws and angrily sat up.

he pulled the blankets off his legs and looked at his legs then looked at the wheelchair.

he pulled himself trying to get the wheelchair as he hurt himself. he didn't care whether he was hurting his leg the pain was stinging him but he didn't care.

tears were fighting to come out as he thought that he couldn't do anything but he didn't dare cry.

he kept pushing himself till he fell off the bed falling painfully hurting his legs.

he laid like that.

CHAPTER 16

- IN FREE STATE -

- NARATTOR -

Mr Khoza was still on the floor leaning on the bed. he kept looking around in fear that he might see a spider or rats on the floor and since he cant move on his own he fears he might even get scared to death.

he heard a knock on the door. he thought it was Tiana so he didn't answer he ignored the knock.

"knocking"

Gogo: Zithu its me your grandmother.

Zithu looked at the door and tried to get up but he couldn't.

he breathed out.

Gogo: Zithu!!

Zithu: come in Grandma.

Granny opened and walked in.

Gogo: Zithu why are you sitting on the floor? are you trying to kill yourself?

Zithu:.....

Gogo: its very cold on the floor and this is cement you will get sick.

she looked at Kagiso.

Gogo: Kagiso go call Pakiso.

Kagiso hurried to call Pakiso.

Pakiso came to Gogo.

Gogo: help Zithu here to get up.

Pakiso: yes Gogo.

Pakiso went to help Zithu to get on the bed and sit on the bed. Zithu kept his eyes everywhere avoiding eye contact and looking at Pakiso or Gogo.

he was going to refuse but because Gogo was here he dared not to.

after being settled on the bed Pakiso attempted to walk out.

Gogo: before you go get me the chair in the kitchen.

Pakiso went to fetch the chair and came back.

Gogo: go put it near the bed there.

she pointed and Pakiso went to put the chair there.

Gogo: thank you boy boy. you can go now.

he left and Gogo went to sit down.

Gogo: Zithu my son are you ok?

Zithu looked down.

Zithu: did Gogo speak to Tiana?

Gogo: mhm... she told me what happened and also told me you asked to be fetched today. she didn't have a choice but to tell me because I was in the kitchen when you were speaking loudly.

Zithu: I am sorry Gogo. I said most of the things out of anger I didn't mean to be disrespectful I am really sorry.

Gogo: I actually understand your situation. I was shocked that you agreed to be here given your health

situations I asked Tiana about it and she said its only for one day.

"clearly she wasn't thinking" Zithu said in his head. but didn't say anything.

Gogo: did she tell you why exactly she brought you here?

Zithu looked at Gogo and looked down.

Zithu: she said she wanted to see you. and her siblings.

Gogo: (chuckles) Mami is stupid I know. but she cant be so stupid to bring you here knowing that this place is not suitable for you. if that was the case I wouldn't have allowed it.

Zithu looked at Gogo confused.

Gogo: communication is everything in a relationship its important that you talk things out before you let emotions take place. Mami is the type of person that you have to spell everything out. that's how stupid she is. you cant say things and let her read between the lines she wont be able to. she jokes a lot but that's because she hides a lot of pain in her. she is quick to listen and try her best to be there for everyone but she doesn't want anyone to be there for her. that's my Mami. she has been like that ever since. to her the happiness of others matter then her own happiness. that's how selfless she is. and sometimes people take advantage of that and she doesn't see.

Zithu had nothing to say.

Gogo: but this doesn't justify the fact that she didn't do her homework well in making sure that you are well taken care off. I really tried to turn the bed around to make it more flexible but I guess it didn't work.

Zithu: I am sorry Gogo I should have let her explain.

Gogo: its ok we listen and learn. in my eyes you only lacked communication. that's all. but you guys still have a long way work on that and you wont have a problem. ok?

Zithu: yes grandma.

Gogo: good. disrespectful son. (smiles)

Zithu smiled and looked down.

Gogo: I will call that Stupid girl so that you can talk. you don't have time visiting hours is only an hour.

Zithu: visiting hours?

Gogo smiled and stood up and walked out leaving the chair in the bedroom.

- MINUTES LATER -

Tiana walked in the room and looked down as Zithu looked at her.

she stood at the door and looked at Zithu.

Tiana: Gogo told me to come see you.

Zithu: (clears throat) mhm.

Zithu looked away trying to think of something to say.

Tiana: oh...

there was a few seconds silence as both avoided looking at each other.

Tiana: Zithu.

Zithu quickly looked at Tiana a bit shocked because Tiana normally calls him using "Mr Khoza".

Tiana: I..... I was stupid right?

Zithu: mhm?

Tiana: I have been thinking about what you said. I am sorry. I should have done better I should have thought of something better. I am truly sorry.

Zithu: its ok I am sorry I didn't let you explain

Sponsored

I am sorry I didn't let you explain I was angry frustrated I just wasn't thinking straight.

Tiana: no you were right? I was being stupid and selfish.

Tiana walked to sit where Granny was sitting on the chair.

Tiana: when I decided to bring you here I wanted you to realize that I alone can take care of you. I wanted you to be free with me to be open with me. I guess I was too comfortable that I thought it was ok to tell you to use the bucket and I would throw away the waste. actually I had been reading online about how to take care of people who cant walk while in a disadvantaged environment I

thought I had it all figured I just forgot to ask if you were ok with it.

Zithu:

Tiana: I became too comfortable huh? (smiles in sadness) I am sorry. I should have known better.

Zithu: come here.

Tiana looked at Zithu

Zithu: come here. come on the bed.

Tiana got up the chair and went to sit next to Zithu.

Zithu: I don't want you next to me I want you facing me.

Tiana: how?

Zithu: sit here on me and face me.

Zithu pointed at his thighs.

Tiana: are you nuts? you want me to sit on your legs?

Zithu: come quickly I want to ask you something.

Tiana: Zithu!

Zithu: Mami come.

Tiana looked at Zithu. she wanted to laugh at the fact that Zithu called her with her nickname but she held it in and just did what Zithu asked her to do.

Tiana sat on Zithu and looked at him Zithu held Tiana's waist.

Zithu: Gogo said something about visiting hours. what is that?

Tiana: ohhh there is this girl I grew up with she used to live next door. she was also involved in an accident and unfortunately for her she lost her leg. she is going to be discharged next month but she has to use a wheelchair I heard from her mother that she isn't having it. but I told her about you she isn't into business or politics or news so she doesn't know who you are. basically she doesn't know who the "Khoza's" are. so I didn't mention you as the public figure but I just said that my husband was also on a wheelchair. she didn't believe me so I promised to bring you here to visit her.

Zithu: you brought me here to visit her to motivate her to use the wheelchair and heal?

Tiana nodded.

Zithu: why didn't you tell me?

Tiana: most public figures don't agree to such activities so telling you while we are going there wasn't going to give you time to refuse.

Zithu: you really are stupid hai.

Tiana looked down ashamed.

Zithu: still didn't you actually think that I needed a proper place to settle down?

Tiana: I know.. I am sorry. I really thought you wouldn't mind using the basket and having me bath you and take care of you. and I didn't know the bed would be so bad. I am sorry.

Zithu flicked Tiana's forehead softly and Tiana held her forehead dramatically.

Tiana: ahhhh! what was that for?

Zithu: that was for being stupid and not planning your trip carefully.

Tiana: (pouting) I am sorry I wont let it happen again.

Zithu smiled and held Tiana's cheeks.

he pulled her close and sat up to reach Tiana's lips.

he planted a long baby kiss on Tiana's lips and pulled out
Tiana bit her lower lip got nervous shy and embarrassed
while looking down.

Tiana: Zithu.... (she said looking down)

Zithu: and that was to apologize.

Tiana:.....

Zithu: why are you looking down? I am only doing what
you wanted.

Tiana: I didn't say I want a kiss.

Zithu: you didn't. but you want some touch affections
right?

Tiana: did I say that?

Zithu: why would you ask about it if you didn't want it?

Tiana: when did I.....

she remembered the night she asked about then looked
at Zithu.

Tiana: whatever.

Zithu: got you.

Tiana looked at Zithu and looked at his smile.

Tiana: you look handsome when you smile.

Zithu: really?

Tiana: mhm.. even without the mask you look handsome.

Zithu looked at her.

Tiana gently took out his mask and placed it on the side. she then looked at Zithu while using her hand to touch the scar once again.

Tiana: I didn't just bring you here to see my friend and help me motivate her but I also wanted you to fully depend on me and allow me to be your wife. as stupid as I am I found myself being happy around you I wished and prayed that you would also be happy around me trust me and give yourself fully to me and that's why I came here. I wanted to break your walls so that I could enter. but seems like I made a fool of myself.

Zithu: what exactly are you saying? that you have fallen for me?

Tiana looked down filing her mouth with air.

Tiana: did you hear me say that?

Zithu smiled and shook his head.

he pulled Tiana close to him and looked at her. Tiana swallowed and looked at Zithu. as Zithu leaned forward Tiana leaned toward.

in a moment they were sharing a passionate kiss.

one that could cause an issue to someone.

More New African Novels PDF Download Here:

www.eBooksteach.Com

CONTINUATION OF 16

- LATER THAT DAY -
- IN FREE STATE -

David was on his way since he was already called to come immediately and it was a good idea that they should leave when David arrives which will be after visiting the girl in hospital. it takes about 5-7 hours driving from Gauteng to Free State depending on the speed and type of car you are driving with and also looking at the routes you are taking.

poor David hopefully he wont be too tired when he arrives. driving long hours 2 days in a row?

Zithu refused to bath in the wash bowl he decided to bath when he arrives home. he avoided drinking water or tea so that he will have less needs to go to the bathroom. Tiana really felt guilty for having to make Zithu suffer like this.

it was now time for them to leave the transport arranged to pick them up had arrived.

Tiana and Pakiso helped Zithu down the 2 steps and Tiana wheeled him to the car. Tiana helped him in the car.

Gogo: tell Mamokoena that I am sorry I couldn't come I can't leave the kids alone here.

Tiana: ok Gogo.

Gogo: have a great visit come back with good news.

Tiana: ok Gogo.

Zithu smiled at Gogo.

Tiana got in the car and the car drove away.

- LATER -

Tiana and Zithu arrived at the hospital they were taken into the ward and as predicted by Mr Khoza there were some people who knew him and were already taking videos and pictures.

he knew what was making it visible that he was one of the Khoza grandsons. it was the mask. the mask that he was putting on.

even though Tiana told him that he should put the mask aside he refuses he hasn't fully accepted the scar as part of him.

Doc: this is the ward.

Tiana: thank you doc.

Tiana walked in and the girl was happy to see Tiana again but she got emotional when she saw Tiana wheeling a man towards her.

Tiana: Matumo how are you today?

Matumo: I am fine I didn't think you would really come today especially with.....

Tiana: I wanted to show you that you can still live even with the wheelchair it doesn't really mean you are useless.

Matumo looked at Mr Khoza.

Matumo: dumelang.

Zithu: saobona Matomo right?

even though he said it wrong Matumo still nodded saying he was right.

Zithu: ahhh.

Tiana: no its not. its Matumo. TUMO!! not TOMO.

Zithu: the owner of the name said I got it right manje wena ungenaphi?

Tiana: mxm

Zithu: anyway I am Zithulele Khoza this Stupid girl's husband.

Tiana: she didn't ask you.

Zithu: I am marking my particles.

Tiana: I am a particle?

Zithu: shhhhhh you are disturbing my precious moment with Matomo here.

Tiana: hai tjho. what a husband.

Zithu: handsome and smart.

Tiana: are you sure.

Matumo laughed looking at them. they stopped and looked at her.

Matumo: you and Mr Khoza would make a good comedy couple show

Zithu: with her? you think she is funny?

Tiana: I am better than you.

More New African Novels PDF Download Here:

www.eBooksteach.Com

Zithu smiled and looked at matumo.

Zithu: don't you want to be my new wife? this one is physics.

Matumo laughed as Tiana just looked at Zithu.

Tiana: I will be physics after I show you formulas

Zithu: I can solve them.

Tiana: mxm. let me warn you Matumo remember how you just didn't understand Afrikaans in class that's exactly Mr Khoza just a warning.

Matumo laughed.

Matumo was so entertained by these two until her doctor walked in and found her in a well lifted spirit.

Doc: ohh I see your mood is lifted.

Matumo: good afternoon doc.

they all greeted.

Doc: ohh this must be our hero of today.

she said looking at Mr Khoza.

Zithu: I guess I am.

Doc: I am glad you could come and cheer our little stubborn child here.

Matumo: I am not stubborn doc.

Doc: oh really now?

they smiled

Doc: well guess what?

Matumo: I don't have to use a wheelchair?

she said excitedly.

Doc: no. you have to use a wheelchair.

she sulked as they smiled at her.

Doc: someone donated a wheelchair for you. now your parents don't have to dig deeper in their pockets to buy one.

Matumo's face lit up and she smiled.

Matumo: really? my mom doesn't have to sell her belongings to buy me a wheelchair?

Doc: yes. thanks to our lovely sponsor.

Matumo: ohhh thank you.. do we know who it is?

Doc: not really. we have no idea.

Matumo: well may God bless that person so that he/she could be the richest person on earth and help more people like me.

Tiana looked at Zithu who was sitting there smiling at Matumo. Zithu felt Tiana's stare and looked at her. he just smiled and looked back at Matumo.

Tiana looked down and smiled.

- LATER -

They had talked to Matumo and encouraged her about the new life she will be living. she even took a picture with Mr Zithu as motivation that she isn't alone but there are more like her.

it was figured that Matumo's biggest worries was that her parents had to sell their things and go make loans for her to get the wheelchair

Sponsored

which was the biggest reason why she refused taking a wheelchair even though she was also scared at how others will see her the money was her biggest issue.

but now she was happy. she was sorted financially and also encouraged. that was way more then she could ask for.

they got in the car and made their way back home. Mr Khoza got a message few minutes ago that David had arrived.

Tiana: was it you?

Zithu: what did I do?

Tiana: you are the sponsor aren't you?

Zithu: well..... can I lie to my wife?

Tiana: so it was you?

Zithu: David sent a text saying he has arrived.

Tiana: well thank you Mr Sponsor but I want to know how and when?

Zithu looked at her and she was looking back.

Zithu: (sigh) ok after you told me about her and how you guys grew up I decided I could at least give something I don't have to say its me that would be bragging but I could gift her the wheelchair since I have money. I bought it online and had it delivered to the hospital under her name and a short message card saying its a sponsorship.

Tiana: wow I am inspired.

Zithu: mhm. and now I got blessed I am about to be the richest man on earth.

Tiana: what? did the company clear your name and you got more clients?

Zithu: no Matomo blessed me remember? so I receive the blessing.

Tiana: its Matumo.

Zithu: getting the name right wont make you any more smart.

Tiana: oksalayo I am smart.

Zithu: you are smart.....less.

Tiana looked at Zithu. she picked him up and down then looked out the window Zithu laughed.

- LATER -

They arrived back to Granny's house and told her everything she was happy for Matumo. David was a bit tired so Granny suggested that he take some sleep before driving.

David didn't want to interrupt but who can say no to Granny?

so when Tiana and Zithu came back they found David already sleeping.

Later David woke up and they all had dinner together. some nice wet pap with some cabbage.

they started eating.

Zithu kept looking at Tiana who was eating with her hands and filling her mouth to brim.

Gogo: haibo Mami no one will eat your food.

Tiana: (mouthful) mhm Gogo.

Zithu just looked at her as she messed on her mouth and ate as if she didn't care. Zithu smiled and shook his head.

Tiana was the first to finish.

Tiana: ahhhh I am not full.

Zithu: we will not be stopping for long toilet breaks why do you want to eat yourself full?

Tiana pouted.

Gogo: (laughs) she eats very well.

Zithu: at this rate she should be careful that she doesn't burst.

Tiana looked at Zithu dirty and Zithu laughed.

Gogo: hai disrespectful son leave my daughter alone.

Tiana stick her tongue out then stood up to start washing dishes.

later they were all set.

they said their goodbyes as they prepared for their night trip.

Gogo said her goodbye. but before she let them go she gave Zithu a word.

Gogo: I leave her in your hands take care of her I trust you.

Zithu: I will Gogo. don't you worry I will not disappoint.

Gogo: if you can do that I will not call you disrespectful son but I will call you favourite son.

Zithu: (smiles) deal.

they smiled and Tiana came to wheel Zithu to the car.

they said goodbye.

it was a bit hard for Tiana to say goodbye to her grandmother she really wanted to stay for long but of

cause she can't. but hopefully her grandmother will give in and come visit them.

"goodbye"

CHAPTER 17

- AT THE MAIN HOUSE -

- NARRATOR -

The Car finally arrived in the yard and Tiana was already fast asleep in the car. who would blame her as the journey was really long.

since it gets really cold at night Zithu had placed his jacket on her for her to not feel cold during the drive.

David parked the car as the gate closed it was very early in the morning around 03:00/04:00.

David: (sigh) home sweet home.

Zithu: I cant believe how much I missed home.

David: but you have been gone for only a day.

Zithu: you have no idea.

David softly laughed.

Zithu looked at Tiana who was sleeping peacefully.

Zithu: look at her sleeping peacefully I wish I didn't have to wake her up.

David didn't say anything he just smiled. he knew what Zithu meant.

Zithu: I wish I could carry her upstairs like how a man should.

David: being on the wheelchair doesn't make you less of a man. you are already giving this marriage your best and by the look of things it seems like this marriage is about to be based on love.

Zithu: you think? Nkululeko thought it could be a feeling of need.

David: how?

Zithu: besides my mom sisters and siblings I never had another female whom I got along with well except her. (looking at Tiana)

David: you had Miss Zikalala Ntokozo your childhood friend that you lost touch with and other female employees.

Zithu: yah.. you right.

David: (smiles) only you know your heart and mind. so no one can actually tell you how you feel except yourself.

Zithu: hai my wife is getting cold. lets go inside. I will have to wake her up.

David smiled as he got out to get the bags in the house first

Zithu: Tiana!! Ti..yaaa..naaa!! (pulling her cheeks)
Mami!! Mammmmiii!!

Tiana moved slapping Zithu's hand from her cheeks and moved her mouth as if she was eating something Zithu laughed.

Zithu: the way you love food you are even dreaming of it? hai hai hai.

Tiana opened her eyes slowly.

Tiana: have we arrived?

Zithu: mhm wake up. lets go in.

Tiana nodded.

Zithu just couldn't stop smiling as he looked at the messy sleepy Tiana. to him Tiana looked so cute.

David brought the wheelchair and helped Zithu out of the car.

they all headed in the house and went up to the bedroom.

David wanted to call Josh but Tiana said she could help.

together they took Mr Khoza upstairs then David went down to get the wheelchair and the bags and hurried up.

Mr Khoza sat on the wheelchair.

Tiana: thank you David you may go rest now I will take Zithu in.

Zithu: I want to speak to David for a while you go in first.

Tiana: okay... but don't take too long I want to sleep.

Zithu: I wont..

Tiana: okay... goodnight David.

Zithu: its.....

Tiana: ahhh Mr know it all keep it to yourself. Mr David the most handsome man on earth goodnight.

David: (laughs) goodnight Mrs Khoza.

Tiana gave Zithu a smirk then walked to the bedroom with their bags.

Zithu: (shakes head) see what I have to deal with?

David just laughed.

Zithu: anyway David.

David: yes sir?

Zithu: you have been very loyal to me always been there for me whenever I needed you without fail. you always proved your loyalty to me. Thank you.

David: its ok sir I promised to take care of you when I took this job. I understand my duties and I know I should always do them without fail.

Zithu: and I know that hard work pays off.

David: true sir.

Zithu: well. firstly I have something to give you. just an appreciation for your loyalty and hard work. but for now

Sponsored

I have something to give you. just an appreciation for your loyalty and hard work. but for now its still early and I am sure you are very tired. well go and rest you have the whole day off. okay?

David: really sir? is it okay?

Zithu: yes its ok.

David: thank you sir.

Zithu: when you are refreshed I will give you the present I have for you.

David: ok sir thank you once again.

Zithu: (nods and smiles) now go rest.

David: good night sir.

Zithu: its morning.

David: Ms Khoza already said its Goodnight.

Zithu: (laughs) I am glad she doesn't realise how much power she has.

David: soon she will know.

Zithu: by then I think I will have 2 more juniors to protect me.

David: (smiles) ohhhhh are we talking family now?

Zithu: go sleep.

David laughed as Zithu smiled wheeling himself to the bedroom

he walked in and found Tiana watching TV sitting on the bed.

Zithu: I thought I would find you sleeping.

Tiana: I should be.

Zithu: already showered?

Tiana: (shook head) no I just changed. but I brushed my teeth.

Zithu: mhm... well I cant wait to get into the bath I feel so dirty.

Tiana: mhm... let me help you.

Tiana got off the bed and went to Zithu.

she took off his mask.

Tiana: take out the eye contacts where is the contact holder?

Zithu: in the bag.

Tiana went to fetch the contact holder and gave it to Zithu to put the contact lenses away.

Tiana then looked at Zithu then once again she ran her fingers on his scar.

Zithu: you always do this when you take my mask off why?

Tiana: I don't know... I guess I always feel like its the first time I see it...

Zithu: does it scare you?

Tiana: no.... (smiles) why would it scare me?

Zithu: just asking.

Tiana: mhm.

Tiana kissed his eye and the scar.

Zithu: have you gone crazy?

Tiana: my scar.

Zithu: psh... can you take me to go bath please.

Tiana: yes.. my scar.

Zithu: mxm.

Tiana helped Zithu out of the jacket and other clothing and shoes.

Zithu was now left with his shorts and vest.

Tiana helped him get to bath.

- ALMOST AN HOUR LATER -

Tiana was busy falling asleep while watching Tv but she couldn't sleep as she had to wait for Zithu to finish.

Zithu called for her she went to help him out.

after the process she gently helped him lay on the bed.

Zithu was smelling fresh.

Tiana: I think we should watch TV until 07:00 then I will make you breakfast so that you have your pills we will sleep after that because if I sleep now I wont wake up easily.

Zithu: its ok just sleep Ms Moisa and Josh will get that done.

Tiana: but I am your wife.

Zithu: hai just rest don't worry too much.

Tiana: mhm..

Tiana switched off the lights then snuggled into the blankets Zithu also switched off the lights and pulled the blankets up.

Zithu: Mami?

Tiana: (laughs) don't be unfair.

Zithu: what do you mean?

Tiana: why are you calling me with my nickname.

Zitha: how is that unfair?

Tiana: because I don't call you by your nickname.

Zitha: well you can call me by my nickname if you want.

Tiana: but I don't know it. what is it?

Zithu:..... its for me to know and for you to find out.

Tiana: (laughs) haibo you still use that phrase? (laughs)

last time I used it I think I was still in primary.

Zithu: (smiles) nothing expires in my world.

Tiana: shows that you are such a baby.

Zithu: yah... your baby.

Tiana: it doesn't suit you.

Zithu: what?

Tiana: being cheesy. it doesn't suit you.

Zithu: at least I tried.

Tiana laughed.

Zithu smiled.

Tiana: Zithu?

Zithu: mhm?

Tiana: there is something I want to ask you.

Zithu: what is it?

Tiana: well now I am sleepy but I have to ask you so I will ask you when I wake up.

Zithu: why bring it up if you know you wont talk about it now? you are just making me hungry for news.

Tiana: and that's a good thing. goodnight.

Zithu: Good morning.

Tiana: I wont argue.

Zithu softly laughed.

CHAPTER 18

- AT THE MAIN HOUSE -

- NARRATOR -

"AHHHHHHH!" that was Lwazi screaming as he was startled by Zithu who was sitting in the living room.

Zithu: haibo have you gone crazy?

Lwazi: Zithu?? is this really you?

Zithu: no its not...

Lwazi: b... but you are supposed to be in Free state coming back today? right?

Zithu: (sigh)... now I know that thieves might come and rob this house and you wont even be aware of that.

Lwazi: hai come on of cause I would be aware and I would kic..... hai why am I speaking with a Ghost?? are you actually Zithu?

Zithu shook his head and continued watching TV..

Lwazi walked towards him and pinched Zithu's shoulders.

Lwazi: ohhh you are real

Zithu: happy now?

Lwazi: but why did you come back early?

Zithu: disappointed?

Lwazi: very. I wanted to have more time without feeling your energy.

Zithu: you can just move out you know. no one is holding you back.

Lwazi: hai... relax you know I like your company.

he smiled.

Lwazi: so how was the Village?

Zithu: did you tell grandpa about the mess you created.

Lwazi: what does that have to do with the village? I asked how the trip went?

Zithu: should I tell him instead.

Lwazi: no no no... it will get worse when you do that.

Zithu: when are you telling him?

Lwazi: come on Zithu you cant threaten me like that you know how grandpa gets he might even close my credit card.

Zithu: how old is she?

Lwazi: who?

Zithu: the girl you messed up with.

Lwazi: huh... I don't really know.

Zithu: what? so you date girls and not know their age?

Lwazi: do you know how old your wife is?

Zithu: well we were arranged to marry. there is a difference. how can you ask a person out and sleep with her without knowing a simple detail as her age? did you even love this girl?

Lwazi: well....

Zithu: Lwazi!!

Lwazi: I know I know. I was stupid and a fool.

Zithu: that's all?

Lwazi: no need to make me feel worse.

Zithu: listen Lwazi speak to grandpa about this before he hears it from others.

Lwazi: I will okay I just need time.

Zithu: you have time you are just wasting it. be careful not to waste too much time because you don't know what others are doing with the time you are wasting.

Lwazi didn't say anything he just felt like a school boy being scolded by his older brother when in fact he is few months older than Zithu.

Tiana walked in the living room.

Tiana: ohh good afternoon Lwazi.

Lwazi: ohh my Queen. good afternoon.

Tiana blushed and looked down.

Zithu: Lwazi go do some thinking.

Lwazi: huh? no need I want to watch.....

Zithu: (interrupted) now.

Lwazi looked at him then looked at Tiana and assessed the situation he then stood up.

Lwazi: ahh can I do the thinking in your car driving around the block?

Zithu: No. but walking is still a suggestion.

Lwazi: come on Zithu at least once.

Zithu: no. now go.

Lwazi stood up walking away still looking back hoping Zithulele will change his mind but no.

Tiana sat down.

Tiana: you need to be a bit easy on your cousin.

Zithu: he likes acting like a child. he should know that he is 28 for heaven sake.

Tiana: mhm...

Zithu: did you come to tell me what you promised to ask me?

Tiana: huh?

Zithu: this morning you said you had something to ask me.

Tiana: ahhhh must I ask now?

Zithu: sooner then later.

Tiana: mhm....

Zithu looked at Tiana.

Tiana: don't look at me like that.

Zithu: why I am just looking at you.

Tiana: ok but not like that.

Zithu: like how?

Tiana: that.

Zithu smiled and looked away.

Zithu: ok I am not looking.

Tiana swallowed and breathed.

Zithu: does it involve us?

Tiana: mhm... mhm (yes)

Zithu: am I in trouble?

Tiana: (soft laugh) Zithu stop it.

Zithu: ok ok.

Tiana: I wanted to ask what is going on.

Zithu turned and looked at Tiana.

Zithu: what do you mean?

Tiana: I was talking to my sister the other day and she asked me how my marriage was going I told her it was ok. she asked me if I was happy I said yes. she asked me whether I am really willing to be with you even though we don't love each other I started explaining how you make me smile and laugh how you annoy me and irritate me and when you are not near me

Sponsored

I..... I tend to miss you.

Zithu: and what did your sister say?

Tiana: she confirmed my thoughts and feelings.

Zithu: which are?

Tiana: Zithu I know we were arranged to marry and that its only been few weeks. but in these few weeks you accepted me as I was you didn't try to change anything about me you let me in your circle and made me feel valuable even though sometimes you call me a pig messy stupid and useless I never feel offended instead I am motivated to be better. I.... I started seeing you in a different way and since you are already my husband I didn't see anything wrong with my thoughts I started seeing you as a man and not as someone I was married off too. now I really thank Keisha for running away and my parents using me as replacement. I don't believe in destiny and fate but because of this I now have a thought about them.

Zithu: did you study this speech from google?

Tiana: No why?

Zithu: its too pure coming from a stupid person like you.

Tiana slapped him on his shoulder he laughed.

Zithu: come sit here.

Again Zithu was asking her to sit on his lap as he sat on the couch in the living room.

Tiana: Zithu your brother can come in here.

Zithu: come sit here.

Tiana: or your helpers.

Zithu: Mami!

Tiana swallowed and bit her lower lip then sat on him gently.

Zithu held her waist and looked in her eyes.

Zithu: I already told you long ago. I lost to you.

Tiana: lost to me?

Zithu: mhm... one cant really say if its love or not but I am happy when I am with you. I like the way you are and I don't want you to change anything unless you want to at your own will. don't let anyone tell you otherwise.

Tiana: you like that I am stupid dress like a granny I eat like a pig I am fat I have pimples on my face and that I am ugly?

Zithu: mhm. I like exactly that. you are not stupid you just need direction. you don't dress like a granny you just cant put an outfit together. you don't eat like a pig you eat well and comfortably. you are not ugly you are beautiful.

Tiana: are you well? you hardly compliment me like that? are you dying?

Zithu: (laughs) never wait for someone to compliment you for you to be sure that you are a great good looking woman. compliment yourself and motivate yourself.

Tiana: (smiles) (shy)

Zithu: and the biggest thing I love about yourself you WERE YOURSELF. you didn't try to be like other people or try to fit in YOU LET ME SEE YOUR TRUE SELF. and that's were uniqueness is.

Tiana: you are making me nervous.

Zithu: (smiles)

Tiana: so since we are both happy.... you.... you wont fall in love with someone else?

Zithu: stupid girl.

Tiana: I am not stupid I just need direction.

Zithu: (laughs) whoever told you that is the most dumbest.

Tiana laughed.

Zithu: Mami listen and listen well ok. I have lost to you fully. meaning I am yours.

Zithu saying "I am yours" made Tiana very nervous. she felt like a school girl excited about dating a boy. she felt butterflies in her stomach.

Tiana has been in a few serious relationships so she understood the feeling very well. she was falling in love. no she was in love with Zithu but she just couldn't say it direct her fears couldn't let her tell Zithu directly that she loves him.

even though they were married she just didn't want to say those words but Zithu saying he is hers assured her that Zithu loved her as well.

but none of them said anything about love.

are these two really in love or they are just pushed by the situation? what will happen when they start interacting with other people will the "love" that they are feeling now be strong enough to stay loyal and true?

CHAPTER 19

- DAYS LATER -
- AT THE MAIN HOUSE -
- NARRATOR -

"house bell ringing"

Tiana happened to be close to where the house bell was located she picked up the phone and opened the gate camera to see who it was. she saw Grandpa and smiled.

Tiana: the gate is open grandpa.

Tiana said that on the phone as she pressed the unlock button.

she then smiled heading down to the living room.

- AT THE LIVING ROOM -

Lwazi Zithu and Josh were sitting in the living room watching TV when the door opened.

they looked at the door and Grandpa walked in.

Lwazi opened his eyes wide open and quickly looked at Zithu who was also surprised to see Grandpa here.

Lwazi: Grandpa? what are you doing here?

Grandpa: I should be asking you that.

Lwazi: huh..... w.... (looks at Zithu) (whispers) did you tell him?

Zithu shook his head then they both looked at grandpa

Zithu: what happened to calling before coming here? and who opened the gate for grandpa?

Grandpa: my dear Makoti did.

at that moment Tiana walked in wearing a smile on her face.

Tiana: Good morning grandpa.

Grandpa: Makoti

Tiana: I welcome you home grandpa would you like me to make anything for you? coffee tea juice?

Grandpa: my energy is about to get drained so coffee please my dear.

Tiana: yes grandpa. baba? coffee?

Zithu looked at Tiana with the "what has gotten into you" look. it was the "baba" that got Zithu surprised at Tiana Tiana only calls him Mr Khoza or Zithu.

Zithu: huh... yah... with...

Tiana: powder milk I know.

Zithu:..... mhm....

Tiana: Josh and Lwazi which would you like?

Zithu: why are you taking orders like this is a restaurant?

Tiana ignored him and looked at Josh and Lwazi.

Josh: anything is fine with me Mrs Khoza.

Lwazi: I think I am about to die.

Tiana: then Coffee for everyone.

she smiled and walked out.

Zithu looked at Lwazi and Josh then at Grandpa.

Josh was confused as to why Zithu and Lwazi were surprised at Grandpa's visit he felt like he was a lost puppy in the forest.

Grandpa: now you peace of rubbish come here!

he said that rushing to Lwazi.

Lwazi quickly jumped over the couch and stood behind it.

Lwazi: Grandpa wait lets talk about this.

Grandpa: talk about what? you thought I wouldn't find out?

he tried running behind the couch but Lwazi moved away.

it was like a chase between tom and jerry.

Lwazi: Grandpa wait I can explain.

Grandpa: explain what? that you are a coward and a fool?

Lwazi: Grandpa I was going to tell you I just wanted to solve this on my own first to show how capable I am.

Grandpa: well then tell me? what have you done so far??

Lwazi: .. huh.... I was still in the process of thinking.

Grandpa: foolish child...

he said running after him Lwazi kept running away from him from couch to couch.

Zithu: Grandpa Lwazi cant we sit down and talk about this

Grandpa: oh you wait your turn is coming.

Zithu: Josh be ready to protect me.

Josh sat there lost and just looking at Grandpa and Lwazi running around and Zithu looking around.

Lwazi: Grandpa please.

Grandpa: I am going to break every piece of bone in you and not forget to twist that little machine of yours because its clear that you cant keep it in your pants.

Lwazi bent a little with his hands already protecting his package as he imagined grandpa really twisting it.

- MINUTES LATER -

Tiana walked in with a tray holding 4 cups of Coffee.
Grandpa was seated on the one seat couch as the 3 sat
on the 3 seat chair.

Tiana: here you go.

she said as she gave everyone their Coffee. she made
sure to pour Zithu's Coffee in his special cup so that she
wouldn't get it mixed up.

she took the tray and smiled walking out.

Grandpa looked at Lwazi.

Lwazi looked down.

Grandpa: name?

Lwazi: Nompilo

Grandpa: where did you meet her?

Lwazi:

Grandpa: Lwazi!!

Lwazi: at a party.

Grandpa: were you dating her?

Lwazi: huh... something like that.

Grandpa: something like that? Lwazi you are a grandson
of the Khoza family the most known family to be rich.
how can you be stupid?

Lwazi:

Grandpa: didn't you know that woman will throw
themselves at you just like that? not because they love
you but because you are rich they are after the money.
and I have to congratulate this young lady because she

just trapped you with one of the best traps of all time. a child.

Lwazi:

Grandpa: tell me are you sure that child is yours?

Lwazi and Zithu looked up.

Zithu: Grandpa are you saying

Grandpa: its possible. who knows what this girl is capable of?

they looked at each other then looked at Grandpa.

Zithu: but Grandpa it could be a possibility that this girl is actually carrying Lwazi's child and that she doesn't have any evil intention.

Grandpa: well your stupid brother went after a 16 year old 16!! now we all know young girls love fairy tales. she is probably thinking that you will marry her and live happily ever after.

Zithu: 16?? Lwazi?

Lwazi: she didn't look 16 ok she loved older.

Zithu: looked? Lwazi you could be arrested.

Grandpa: the worst is that this girl might cry rape when she realises that she wont be marrying Lwazi.

Zithu: how did grandpa know that she is 16?

Grandpa: I called Lwazi's mother and asked her if all this was true she agreed and told me everything. she also told me that they just left the girl at her house saying this girl must stay there since she decided to be a woman.

Lwazi: so she is currently living with mama?

Grandpa: yes. while you sit here and enjoy life she is living with your mother and already thinking she is the makoti. Lwazi Lwazi!

Zithu gave Lwazi the look and Lwazi looked down.

Grandpa: 28 years old with a 16 year old how disgusting. you really have to grow up Lwazi you are not a child anymore.

Lwazi still didn't say anything he kept looking down.

Zithu was still shocked at the age of this girl and kept his eyes at Lwazi.

Lwazi has always been that guy the player. he never wished to settle down he just wanted to play around and now

Sponsored

he just wanted to play around and now the consequence comes and it is not looking well.

- LATER -

- AT THE COMPANY -

Nkululeko was in his office on the call with Zithu.

Zithu: so you told Grandpa about Lwazi's situation?

Nkululeko: mhm.

Zithu: I thought I asked you not to say anything now he thinks I told grandpa.

Nkululeko: that boy must learn to grow up. he is few months older than you but acts like he is 7 years younger than you. he is living freely and wasting his time. he never takes anything serious. its about time he grows up.

Zithu: (sigh) well you are right he can really be childish.

Nkululeko: anyway has it been solved?

Zithu: not yet and I don't want to be involved Lwazi will be going back home with grandpa tonight then they will call the uncles to discuss this. knowing grandpa I feel sorry for the girl. I really hope that girl doesn't have any feelings for Lwazi.

Nkululeko: why?

Zithu: if she has then she is about to feel very hurt. you know Grandpa will never approve their relationship.

Nkululeko: eash. I really hope grandpa would stop being over protective and let us be.

Zithu: yah. anyway enough about Lwazi how are you? are you doing ok at the company?

Nkululeko: mhm.. everything is falling back to place I also managed to speak some sense into the client.

Zithu: I am glad did you find the person who forged my signature?

Nkululeko: not yet but I am close.

Zithu: ok.. I am glad.

Nkululeko: I heard you are coming back in 2 weeks?

Zithu: mhm... I think I am ready to come back. I have been resting for long and sitting around doing nothing is starting to get to me.

Nkululeko: well this company misses you. better come back quickly.

Zithu: hai don't worry when I come back you will still help me with the company no need to leave everything.

Nkululeko: that's ok with me.

Zithu: ok I have to go. take care.

Nkululeko: mhm.

Zithu hung up and Nkululeko's smiled whipped off.

he then dialled a number and waited for the person to pick up.

???: Nkululeko?

Nkululeko: yah how far are we?

???: just more time.

Nkululeko: we don't have time I just confirmed with Zithulele he will be back in 2 weeks.

???: we will be done by then.

Nkululeko: good. don't disappoint me.

???: I wont.

Nkululeko hung up and leaned back going into thinking mode.

A LITTLE BACKGROUND STORY

years ago Nkululeko Lwazi Zithu and Mvelo were 4 grandkids that were very close. well they seemed close but in deep search they were not.

Zithu trusted Nkululeko more but Nkululeko hated Zithu more than anyone. Lwazi loved Zithu more but Zithu never noticed Lwazi Mvelo loved all his youngsters even though his youngsters respected him and treated him like the brother he is they never really catered for his

feelings. he always put his youngsters first but they never did that for him.

Luvuyo and Simo are the oldest they were not part of the circle as they got married first and escalated into their own worlds.

Mvelo was also never interested in business he wanted to be a doctor and that's what he chose. it was tough especially with a grandfather like their grandfather but he persisted.

The 3 remained as grandfathers hope but Zithu was the best option because he was Zimele's (grandfather's favourite son) son and he was interested in business. hence why grandfather invested more in him. Nkululeko was also interested in business but was never recognised.

WHY? Lets just say the sin's of the father rubbed off to the son and when the secret is revealed the one who trusted more will be more hurt.

"The apple never falls far from its tree"

CHAPTER 20

ARRANGED MARRIAGE: THE MASKED MAN

020

- LATER THE SAME DAY (EVENING) -
- NARRATOR -

Lwazi had left with grandfather grandfather demanded that he packed and came with him for 2 reasons.

1. This was Zithu's house and he needed some of his privacy with his wife.
2. They have a situation to fix so fixing it now is better then later.

Tiana and Zithu were already in bed.

Tiana: really? a 16 year old? and how old is Lwazi?
Zithu: 28.

Tiana's eyes widened.

Tiana: 123456789101112.. (after counting with her fingers she looked at Zithu with her mouth wide opened)
12 years difference. that's rape.

Zithu: that's exactly what that girl might say I hope it doesn't get to that.

Tiana: tjho tjho tjho...

Zithu: but my worst fear is when this makes it to the news and media. it will become a mess. the talk of the world wont end.

Tiana: the disadvantaged of being in a well known family.

Zithu: yah. but its better we are not in any relationship with politics because if we were it would be worse. see yes among people who are interested in business we are well known but to people who aren't interested in business then they might not know who the Khoza family are.

Zithu: like I also didn't know who you were. when I heard I will be marrying you I thought you were just another

business man but Slindile told me about the Khoza family I looked you up and that's how I knew you.

Zithu: yet you still had to ask me in the car who I was.

Tiana: agggg you still remember? mxm.. you harshly shut me up.

Zithu: I was annoyed. I didn't think you would turn out to be this woman I see in front of me.

Tiana: (smile)

Zithu: why did you agree to marry me? if I remember well you said you had to leave the love of your life for me.

Tiana: (looks down).. well... Keisha ran away my father was stressed that he wouldn't be able to fulfil his promise. he then asked me to take Keisha's place my parents didn't know about my ex they didn't know that I was dating. I told them I wouldn't marry someone I didn't know he told me you were a good person and your family was also great he also told me that if I marry you he would be very happy because he would know that he can die in peace knowing that I am well taken care off. he sat me down and told me that he always wanted me to marry from your family but my mom insisted that we start with Keisha first since she was younger then me then I would marry another brother from the same family. but now I have to step in since Keisha left. to be honest I felt like a toy that was passed on from one person to the other. I felt used and not valued. hence why I didn't even call back home in the few weeks. even though I know they did it for my best and I know they love me but still I felt as if I was dumped.

Zithu: well I am glad they made you a toy and made you replace Keisha. imagine you being Nkululeko's wife or Lwazi's wife. I would be damn jealous.

Tiana: who knows maybe Keisha would've been a great wife.

Zithu: I am sure a thousand times that I would be jealous. and I thank my grandmother for being there for me. she helped me pick the best.

Tiana: mxm.

Zithu smiled at Tiana.

Tiana: so how old are you?

Zithu: 27

Tiana: ohhh so you are only a year younger then Lwazi?

Zithu: few months.

Tiana: same.

Zithu: not the same.

Tiana: oho... well at least I am not dating someone who is 12 years older then me.

Zithu: what's wrong with dating someone who is 12 years older then you?

Tiana: hai I don't see anything wrong to others

Sponsored

I don't see anything wrong to others but personally never! my limit has always been 10.

Zithu: how old are you?

Tiana: 20.

Zithu: 7 years? that's a lucky number.

Tiana: really?

Zithu: mhm.

Tiana: why?

Zithu: because I want 7 kids.

Tiana: ahhhhhh!

Zithu: yebo.

Tiana: nyeke. have you watched videos of woman giving birth?

Zithu: why would I watch that?

Tiana: I think you have to then you will know how painful it is. I mean I am already afraid of being pregnant wena you want 7 kids.

Zithu: don't worry I will there with you when you give birth.

Tiana: (scoffs) hai no comment.

Zithu smiled.

Zithu: Tiana.

Tiana: mhm.

Zithu: do you have dreams?

Tiana: mhm a lot sometimes they are nightmares... I...

Zithu: stupid girl I mean goals in life.

Tiana: ohhh... well..

she said that giving it a thought.

Tiana: I wanted to be a nurse or a caretaker. especially at the old age home or orphanage for kids or disabled people.

Zithu: you like taking care of others?

Tiana: mhm.. I like seeing people happy and loving themselves. I want to spread self love and give people a chance to live happily.

Zithu: that's nice.

Tiana: and my first task is this man near me.

Zithu: me?

Tiana: mhm its time I started the #maskmustfall challenge.

Zithu: please leave me alone.

Tiana: well I thank God that he gave you this scar and the blind eye and put you in a wheelchair. if it wasn't for that Keisha wouldn't have run away and right now I would be with someone else while Keisha is here with you.

Zithu:

Tiana: I am thankful for you Zithu.

Zithu: you always just have to leave me speechless.

Tiana: (smiles)

Zithu: come here!

Zithu pulled Tiana to lay closer to him.

Tiana came closer and they looked at each other.

Tiana moved towards him and their lips touched.

with soft movements their lips moved and they exchanged a passionate kiss. it became steamy in the room and Tiana pulled out.

she looked at Zithu who formed a smile at her.

Tiana: Zithu!

Zithu: Mami!

Tiana: (smiles) I am waiting for you.

Zithu looked at Tiana wondering if he heard right. Tiana kept looking at him.

Zithu: what did you say?

Tiana: I said I am waiting for you.

Zithu: (clears throat) go sleep.

Tiana laughed as she went to switch off the lamp on her side as Zithu switched off his.

- THE NEXT DAY (AFTERNOON) -

"AUUUUUUUUUUUUUUUUUUU" that was Zithu screaming through his teeth as his doctor was stretching his legs.

Zithu has both ankle fractured and on top of that his right leg cut open. he was very lucky to not have gotten his legs cut off. the surgery went well and the wound is treated well. we can only thank God in this.

Doc: its almost done. hold on.

Zithu: Ahhhh!!

Doc: almost there..

The doctor finished and placed his leg down.

Doc: ok all done.

Zithu: ahhh I am even sweating.

Doc: (laughs)

Doc packed the remaining things in his medical bag.

Doc: from next week you have to come to the hospital to start your walking journey.

Zithu: (sigh)

Doc: you have to attend it fully it will be easy now that you have a wife to support you.

Zithu: huh... Doc can I ask. in my condition will I be able to satisfy my wife?

the doc sat on a chair and looked at him.

Doc: well it all depends on how your body and legs say. have you tried touching her?

Zithu: well we have kissed and touched but to me its just that it doesn't have any sexual strings to it.

Doc: sexual decline is normal in a situation like this. even if its not the body it could be the mind. the feeling of being ashamed and embarrassed also play a significant role.

Zithu: I don't want her to be needy in a way.

Doc: don't push yourself take your time. its all about letting your body free and listening to it also we still have to trace if the accident didn't harm you emotionally any signs of PTSD so far?

Zithu: I don't know if this counts but I keep thinking about the accident having flashbacks.

Doc: what about when you enter a car? having any issues?

Zithu: nothing yet. I still feel normal when traveling.

Doc: ok... then its still good then.

Zithu: Thank you doc.

Doc: I get paid to heal.

Zithu: mhm (smiles)

Tiana walked in.

Tiana: ohh all done?

Doc: yes Mrs Khoza. he did well today.

Tiana: ohh mahn I really wanted to see him cry like a baby.

Doc: (laughs) you missed all the drama.

Tiana: too bad.

Zithu: says someone who still cant stand a wound.

Tiana: mxm.

Doc: ohk let me leave you love birds alone I will see myself out.

Tiana: thank you Doctor moloi.

the doc smiled and waked out.

Tiana: can I do anything for you? want a stroll outside? the garden?

Zithu: something better.

Tiana: which is?

Zithu: I want to go to the Bergbron park

Tiana: where is that?

Zithu: its a park not far from here its really quiet and beautiful.

Tiana: mhm. ok. anyway I wanted to ask I don't see David around anymore. its been days now. did you fire him?

Zithu: no. I gave him 2 weeks off to take his family out.

Tiana: oh?

Zithu: mhm.

Tiana: so he has a family but stays here mon-fri?

Zithu: yah that was when I needed him more. he was my only personal help. but now I have you so he wont be sleeping over anymore.

Tiana: ohhhh. same goes to the other staff its time you created a new working schedule.

Zithu: yes ma'am.

they both laughed.

Tiana went to Zithu and kissed his mask.

Zithu: you are supposed to kiss here not my mask.

Tiana: (laughs) oops.

Zithu: cheater!!

Tiana: no I am a panther.

she said that walking to the closet. Zithu just smiled.

CHAPTER 21

- 2 MONTHS LATER -

- AT THE MAIN HOUSE -

Zithu: she is just my childhood friend.

Tiana: whatever Zithu.

Zithu: and what does that mean?

Tiana: I don't know Zithu what should it mean?

Zithu: are you seriously angry right now?

Tiana: wouldn't you be? huh? a female friend of yours shows up on your doorstep claiming to not have a place to stay and ohhh father Christmas is here to serve some shelter.

Zithu: Mami I only want to help her. she has always been there for me ok. cant I be there for her?

Tiana: and who else Zithu? so many people have been there for me does that mean I have to play mother Christmas when they need help?

Zithu: cant you understand? she only has me as her last option.

Tiana: wow lucky her right.

Zithu: would you stop being jealous for a minute and think logical.

Tiana: since I am stupid Zithu as you always say why are you even discussing this with me?

Zithu: oh.. is this how it is?

Tiana: Zithu just do whatever you want. its your house anyway.

Tiana said heading to the door.

Zithu: Tiana I am still talking to you.

Tiana turned to Zithu.

Tiana: no matter what I say you will convince me that I am wrong and you are just trying to help her so why even bother?

Zithu: you know what its ok. just leave. its not like I can discuss anything with you.

Tiana: (scoffs) right.

Tiana walked out slamming the door closed.

she walked down and walked through the living room where the girl was seated with her bags.

she looked at her.

Her: hi..

The girl said with a smile waving her hand.

Tiana just looked away and walked out the house.

Zithu was able to use walking sticks to walk around but still needed the wheelchair as he wasn't fully healed yet.

after a while since he still gets helped down the stairs he wheeled himself in the living room where the girl was. the girl looked at him as he wheeled himself in.

Zithu: I am sorry I took so long.

Amanda: its okay.

Zithu: I spoke to my wife well it didn't go as I hoped but.....

Amanda: (sighs) its ok. I understand. I will just see what I will do. myself and my baby will survive.

Zithu: baby?

Amanda: yah. I am pregnant with his child. I couldn't tell him because I was scared scared that he would want me to abort or something.

Zithu: (sigh) listen you don't have to go through this alone. remember how you used to be there for me? now its my turn. you can stay here until you find your feet.

Amanda: really? what about your wife? she didn't look like someone who had approved.

Zithu: you saw her already?

Amanda: when she was heading out.

Zithu: ohh. leave her to me. she is a woman I am sure she will understand.

Amanda: thank you Zithulele you are very kind hearted just like you were when we were growing up.

Zithu: (smiles) want anything to eat?

Amanda: yes please. we hardly had nothing to eat yet.

Zithu: ok

Sponsored

just like you were when we were growing up.

Zithu: (smiles) want anything to eat?

Amanda: yes please. we hardly had nothing to eat yet.

Zithu: ok my kitchen help will help with that.

Amanda nodded.

- LATER -

Zithu has been calling and calling Tiana but she wasn't answering her calls he was starting to worry especially because Tiana never went out for so long because there are no places where she goes to without Zithu.

he kept calling and calling.

The living door opened and Tiana walked in.

Zithu looked at the door and sighed in relieve when he saw Tiana.

Zithu: where have you been? and why haven't you been picking up my calls.

Tiana: I was at the park I needed some peace of mind.

Zithu: you got me worried.

Tiana: sorry.

Zithu: (sigh) Tiana.....

Tiana: I am very tired I am heading up to sleep.

Zithu: you haven't had dinner.

Tiana: I am not hungry.

Zithu: Tiana!

Tiana: is there something you want me to help you with before I head to sleep?

Zithu: we have to talk.

Tiana: about?

Zithu: Amanda.

Tiana: I thought

Zithu: she is pregnant. are you really asking me to send a pregnant woman on the streets?

Tiana:

Zithu: I was going to tell her that you were uncomfortable with her living here but a poor innocent baby is involved.

Tiana:

Zithu: are you not going to say anything?

Tiana: what can I say Zithu. that I am happy to have her here?

Zithu: Tiana!

Tiana: or what? that I am insecure and don't like it when you care so much about another girl?

Zithu:

Tiana: which one do you want to hear Zithu?

Zithu: I want to hear what you really think.

Tiana: what I really think?

Zithu: yes!

Tiana: I want to sleep. that's what I am thinking.

Zithu:.....

Tiana: may I be excused?

Zithu sighed and nodded.

Tiana walked passed him heading to the bedroom.

- MEANWHILE -

Amanda was in her room hugging her pillow as tears scrolled down her cheeks.

she was scared and feared for her life. this was the third relationship she was in where she was treated as a punching bag.

she thought she had found a real man a lover but after getting married he revealed his true self. now she had to run away and come here.

she kept asking herself why why she had to always date such man why she never deserved happiness why she never found someone who cared who loved her and respected her.

coming here was really her last choice. she needed help and Zithu was the only person she could think of.

- NEXT DAY -

Amanda woke up early and decided to treat Zithu and Tiana with breakfast to thank them for letting her stay.

she washed her face and brushed her teeth. then she hurried down but she found Tiana already in the kitchen making breakfast.

Amanda: oh hi Tiana.

Tiana turned and looked at her.

Tiana: good morning..

she then looked away and continued making breakfast.

Amanda: (soft laughs) Zithu still loves his eggs half done? such a baby.

Tiana looked at her but didn't say anything.

Amanda: you know he would always

Tiana: excuse me but I have to take this up to Zithu
excuse me.

Tiana walked passed her with the plates in her hand and headed to her bedroom.

Amanda stayed there in the kitchen and watched Tiana leave. she looked down and sighed then noticed that another plate was left on the table.

she clearly saw Tiana take two plates with her.

she smiled and went to sit down and have her breakfast.

- MEANWHILE -

Tiana walked in the bedroom with the plates and handed Zithu his.

Zithu: did you also make for Amanda? she must be hungry.

Tiana: don't worry your wife is probably eating right now.

Zithu: I can see that my wife is eating I meant Amanda.

Tiana: isn't she your wife?

Zithu: is your name Amanda?

Tiana rolled her eyes and just ate her food while watching TV.

Zithu: Tiana....

Tiana: lets not spoil this day its still early in the morning. please.

Zithu let her be and continued eating.

CHAPTER 22

- AT THE MAIN HOUSE -

- NARRATOR -

Amanda was seated in the living room watching TV alone.

The TV advert advertised the "stop woman abuse" campaign and she started having flashbacks of what happened.

_____FLASHBACK_____

Amanda: Bongani please (crying)

Bongani: please yani Amanda you fail to do little things as a wife uzongjela ngo please. what do you do all day huh? what do you do? is this the kind of food I will be eating everyday? huh?

Amanda: Bongani.....

Bongani: hai shut up mahn!!

Bongani said that giving Amanda a hot back slap on the face.

Amanda screamed and fell down blocking her face as she also cried begging Bongani to stop.

Amanda: Bongani please don't do this.

Bongani: I said shut up wena. you dare speak to me like that??

he said that throwing a few kicks at Amanda.

Amanda knowing that she was pregnant she laid on her stomach so that Bongani could kick everywhere but not her stomach.

she cried and cried as Bongani kept hitting her.

when he was done he clicked his tongue and walked to the bedroom.

Amanda laid there for a while as she felt her body aching. she held her stomach and said a little prayer.

_____END OF
FLASHBACK_____

Her phone rang making her snap out of her thoughts. she looked at it it was her husband Bongani.

she looked at it and swallowed.

she loved Bongani very much and at this moment she wanted to go back to him but she just couldn't stand being beaten.

she slowly reached for the phone and started trembling as she wanted to answer.

she took a deep breath and answered.

Amanda: Bongani.

Bongani: my love. where are you?

Amanda: (sniff) what do you want Bongani.

Bongani: my love I want to apologise you know I would never hurt you I would never do that I love you Amanda with everything I have I would do anything for you please love come back home. come back to me. come back to your love.

Amanda: Bongani... (slowly starts crying)

Bongani: babe. listen I was angry I also didn't know what was happening I don't know what got into me babe please.

Amanda:

Bongani: ok babe listen we will go counselling I will take therapy please babe just come home.

Amanda: Bongani you always say this you always say you will deal with your anger management but you never did.

Bongani: it was just time babe this time I am serious. I have even made an appointment with the pastor already.

Amanda wiped her tears surprised to hear Bongani say that.

Amanda: (sniff) you did?

Bongani: yes love I did. I did. you can ask him I am meeting him this weekend and I would love you to come with me. please babe come back home.

Amanda: you really spoke to the pastor really? (smiles through the tears)

Bongani: yes babe. really? so please come home

Sponsored

really? (smiles through the tears)

Bongani: yes babe. really? so please come home lets work this out. just tell me where you are and I will come fetch you.

Amanda:

Bongani: love? tell me where you are?

Amanda: I.... I am at.....

immediately Zithu wheeled himself in the house and Amanda looked at him.

Zithu shook his head and Amanda swallowed.

Amanda: I have to go Bongani..

Bongani: Amanda wait love listen.

Amanda: I will call again ok.

Bongani: you are coming right? you are coming home right?

Amanda:

she looked at Zithu again who was looking at her.

Amanda: yes... I am coming home.

Bongani: thank you love you wont regret it. I am going to change for us.

Amanda: I know. I know.

Bongani: hurry back ok?

Amanda: mhm.

Bongani: ok I love you..

Amanda: I love you too.

Amanda slowly put the phone down and hung up.

she looked down and looked at Zithu.

Amanda: don't you know its rude to listen in in people's conversations.

Zithu: are you really going back to him?

Amanda: (looks away) he spoke to the pastor about counselling.

Zithu: so? you think he will change?

Amanda: every one changes Zithu. either from good to bad or from bad to good. its possible.

Zithu: fine but do you think Bongani will change?

Amanda:..... I believe God will touch his heart.

Zithu: God? Amanda are you listening to yourself? you told me that that man abuses you he physically hits you. and you want to go back to that hell hole?

Amanda: Zithu I really thank you for hearing me out and taking me in. already I feel uncomfortable here since I see that your wife is not happy with my stay here this is better for all of us.

Zithu: I said I will speak with Tiana but having you go back to that dog is not on.

Amanda: its my life Zithu.

she said that standing up.

Amanda: Thank you Zithu for being there for me when I needed you. I will go pack my things and get going.

Zithu: Amanda don't do this.

Amanda looked at the door as Tiana walked in.

she then smiled and walked passed them both and walked to her room.

as Zithu turned to stop Amanda he saw Tiana. who was confused as to what was happening but seeing Amanda and Zithu in one room was enough reason to give Zithu a death stare and Zithu looked down and sighed.

- AT NKULULEO'S HOUSE -

Mom: Nkululeko you are slow mahn. after all this time what have you done?

Nkululeko: mama these things take time.

Mom: time se foot man Nkululeko look now Grandpa is sick and I am sure he left the company in Zithu's name. if you don't act quick baba will die before including you in his will.

Nkululeko: mama....

Mom: Nkululeko mahn!!

Nkululeko: why do you always push this like this? I am starting to think you want this more then I want it.

Mom: Nkululeko: I didn't get this far for you to play around I invested a lot of money.

Nkululeko: did I ask you to? mom you sabotaged grandpa on your own caused Zithu's accident on your

own bribed some shareholders to vote Zithu out of the company but unluckily you never succeeded. and I kept those secrets for you.

Mom: because I did it for you.

Nkululeko: for me?? you always say that mama.

Mom: because its true.

Nkululeko: then how about this leave this game alone I know how to fight my own battles. I know how to deal with Zithu in my own way.

the mother looked at him and folded her arms.

Mom: fine I will stand back and watch but when you get stung by the bee don't come here looking for treatment.

Nkululeko looked at her and looked away.

CONTINUATION OF 22

- AT THE MAIN HOUSE -

Zithu and Josh were in Amanda's bedroom Zithu asked Josh to go with him.

Zithu: Amanda don't do this.

Amanda: Zithu Bongani promised to change I have to support him.

Zithu: ok fine. but before you leave Tiana would like to speak to you.

Amanda: Tiana?

Zithu: yes. she asked me to come and ask you to give her a minute to talk to you. I don't know what she wants to say.

Amanda looked down then looked at Zithu.

Amanda: ok..

Zithu: ok I will go get her.

Amanda nodded.

Zithu looked at Josh and nodded Josh wheeled him out and directed him to their bedroom.

Zithu got in alone but Tiana was not in the bedroom.

he took out his phone and dialled her number. it rang 3 times before she answered.

Tiana: Zithu.

Zithu: Mami can I talk to you please

Tiana: talk?

Zithu: please I am in our bedroom.

Tiana:..... ok I am on my way.

Zithu: ok.

Tiana hung up.

moments later Tiana opened the door and walked in finding Zithu seated on his wheelchair looking at her.

Tiana: is Amanda ok?

Zithu: she got a call from her husband I think he sweet talked her into going back now Amanda wants to go back.

Tiana: back to the abusive husband?

Zithu: mhm.

Tiana:..... (sigh) did you call me to go stop her?

Zithu: can you do that for me?

Tiana: (chuckled in disbelief) ask her to stay?

Zithu: she doesn't necessarily have to stay here we can get her a pace to stay where she will be safe.

Tiana: I know I shouldn't be asking this but are you really her only hope? she probably has friends family or someone.

Zithu: I don't really know about that I never had the chance to ask her.

Tiana: (nodded) mhm...

Zithu: please come sit down.

Tiana didn't even complain she went to sit near Zithu.

Zithu: I realised that I have been oppressing your feelings and opinions down. its just that when I saw Amanda at the gate looking scared and crying I broke down. all that was in my head was to help her. I didn't care how I just wanted to help her expecially after knowing that she was abused.

Tiana: I understand you Zithu. I understand that she is your childhood friend and that you guys grew together trust me I am not trying to separate you or your friendship. but Zithu I am your wife and this affects me. imagine if it was me having another man come here looking for my help. I doubt you would even let him in the yard. you would tell him to his family or other male friends. wouldn't you?

Zithu:

Tiana: (sigh) Zithu how will we go through things if we cant even talk about them?

Zithu: this is why I called you here. I want us to talk.

Tiana: ok. lets talk Zithu is Amanda really going to stay here?

Zithu: is it uncomfortable to you?

Tiana: she is your childhood friend you guys are too close sharing a house is just me giving her a brick to hit me with.

Zithu wanted to laugh but held his laughter in.

Tiana smiled looking at Zithu with the " I am being serious"

Zithu: ok sorry sorry.

Tiana: as I was saying I can not have Amanda living here. actually no female friend of yours can ever be that close.

Zithu: ok I understand and I also feel why you don't want that because I would also hate seeing a man being close to you like that.

Tiana: I am glad you agree with me.

Zithu: ok now can we talk about where she will go?

Tiana: we will talk about that after I go talk to her. she cant go back to her husband she might die or lose the baby.

Zithu: thank you... Thank you very much.

Tiana: is she still in her room?

Zithu: yes.

Tiana: ok. while I go talk to her think about where you will place her you are rich and have connections. prove to me that you are actually smart just like you brag to me.

Zithu: are you challenging my intelligence?

Tiana: more like motivating your empty brains.

Zithu: (laughs) I missed you.

Tiana: mxm shut up.

she said as she stood up and walked out smiling. Zithu watched her leave as he also smiled.

after a while Tiana knocked on Amanda's door.

Amanda opened for her.

Amanda: ohh Tiana.

Tiana: (smiles) hi.

Amanda: please come in.

Tiana walked in and Amanda closed the door.

Tiana: huh... I heard Zithu tell me that are going back.

Amanda smiled sadly and sat on the corner of the bed.

Amanda: (sigh) he is right. I am going home.

Tiana: but must you have to?

Amanda: he is going to get help we can be happy again?

Tiana: do you know how many woman say that?

Amanda looked at Tiana.

Tiana: "he will change" "he is just angry" do you know how many woman lost their lives because of that?

Amanda:

Tiana: Amanda I don't care about you right now whether you want to go there and get beaten up some more

Sponsored

its non of my business but the baby you are carrying is the reason I am even here trying to stop you from leaving.

Amanda touched her stomach and looked down.

Tiana: Amanda this about your child. he/she deserves better. you surely don't want to regret it when you go back and your husband hit you and you lose the child.

Amanda: but..... (crying) I... I love him..

Tiana: I know. but Amanda is the love worth your death or your child's death?

Amanda:.....(crying)

Tiana: you can go to your family stay there for a while serve your pregnancy then decide what you want to do.

Amanda looked down.

Amanda: I.... my family and I are not in good terms.

Tiana: what about friends?

Amanda: I was always at home.. Bongani hates it when I hang around a lot so I only went to work and came home straight. even at work I just focused on my work because once I start making friends Bongani says it is a first sign that I will start dating around and sleeping with friends. he keeps on saying friends are not good for me. as they will try to change me and lie to me or manipulate me.

Tiana: so that's why you only saw Zithu as your only hope? but don't you think that would anger your husband more? knowing that you went to another man.

Amanda: I... I didn't think about that. I just wanted help I wanted to run away.

Tiana: ok Zithu and I will find a place for you then you can be there and serve your pregnancy ok?

Amanda: what if..... what if he starts looking for me?

Tiana: he wont find you. I promise.

Amanda cried while looking down.

Tiana moved closer to her and hugged her. once Amanda felt her hug she cried even more.

- AT GRANDFATHER'S HOUSE -

(on the phone with Lwazi's mom)

L.mom: baba so what will we do with the girl? she is still young and her family wont take her back.

Grandpa: she should learn not to be opening her legs at such a young age and if she knew that she as that forward she should have atleast used protection.

L.mom: baba I cant. I have my own issues. Lwazi is old now. he is either going to get a house here and take care of this girl or come go back to south Africa with the girl.

Grandpa: and stay where? Lwazi doesn't have a house because he cant invest he used all his inherited money to play around how will he take care of that girl.

L.mom: so what now baba?

Grandpa: I will not be involved. Lwazi did this mess with this girl let them solve the puzzle. but one thing I will not except is having that girl as my Makoti if Lwazi dares speak about marriage I will disown him out of the Khoza group.

L.mom: kodwa baba isn't marriage the only reasonable thing right now?

Grandpa: then we have to arrange Lwazi's wedding.

L.mom: must it always be about money baba? for once can you not think about profits and benefits when making decisions.

Grandpa: (coughing) its for their own good. I mean look at Lwazi marring that girl. Lwazi will fail. already we can see that that girl doesn't have direction she doesn't have a goal or a purpose so she wont make a good wife.

L.mom: baba let Lwazi and this girl come and keep you company that way they can look after you.

Grandpa: I can look after myself.

L.mom: baba.

another call came through and it was Zithu.

Grandpa: my grandson is calling I will talk to you later hung up.

L.mom: hai ok baba.

she hung up and grandpa answered Zithu's phone.

Grandpa: Zithu?

Zithu: Grandpa how are you?

Grandpa: I am doing better and better.

Zithu: I am glad. huh... Grandpa can you please help me with something?

Grandpa: anything son what is it?

Zithu: you know I never ask you anything right grandfather and when I do its always very important.

Grandpa: what is it?

Zithu: remember Amanda?

Grandpa: Amanda?

Zithu: from the Mhlongo family.

Grandpa: ohhhh Amanda! wow! do you miss her? I have never heard you mention her since she got married.

Zithu: well she is here with me.

Grandpa: with you and where is Tiana?

Zithu: talking to her. grandpa Amanda is in trouble and needs a place to stay I cant explain over the phone but I will come and explain everything I just need your help.

Grandpa: well I do have plenty of space here but what about her parents?

Zithu: as I said I will explain everything when I come with her. and another is that she is pregnant.

Grandpa: haibo. kanti do I look like a maternity ward security?

Zithu: please grandpa.

Grandpa: hai you better have a good explanation I don't want troubles between myself and the Mhlongos they are good friends of mine.

Zithu: ok dad we will be there tomorrow

Grandpa: mhm. and bring its time you uped your game. all these people are having kids and you are delaying. I want to see my favourite great grandson/daughter before I die.

Zithu: grandpa I am sick.

Grandpa: you not sick you are lazy.

Zithu: bye grandpa see you tomorrow

Grandpa: mhm. ok ok

Zithu hung up.

CHAPTER 23

- AT THE MAIN HOUSE -

Tiana walked in the bedroom and walked straight to the bed as though she was tired and drained.

Zithu: Tiana? why do you look like a living ghost?

Tiana just sighed as she threw herself on the bed.

she then smiled as she faced the ceiling.

Zithu: should I call the Mental institution?

Tiana: for Amanda? she is not mad.

Zithu: for you.

Tiana: (scoffs) now I am crazy?

Zithu: what can explain your action now? you smiling all alone its not like Amanda's situation is something to laugh about.

Tiana: you are right. its not something you can smile about. but I am just happy.

Zithu: happy?

Tiana: Amanda chose to stay I am happy because I saved an innocent child.

Zithu: where is Amanda now?

Tiana: she cried herself to sleep.

Zithu: but she is ok right?

Tiana: yes she is ok. this caretaker took care of her.

Zithu: mhm... my caretaker.

Tiana: (smiles)

Zithu: anyway I just got off the phone with grandpa he agreed to have Amanda stay with him until she gives birth but I have to go there to explain.

Tiana: that's great. when are you taking her?

Zithu: tomorrow afternoon.

Tiana: mhm...

Zithu: and you madam are coming with me.

Tiana: why?

Zithu: to help me explain to my grandfather.

Tiana: explain what? she is your best friend and she asked you for help you know the whole story I just stepped in to help her choose a better option. what am I explaining?

Zithu: you will be explaining why you aren't yet pregnant.

Tiana: preg... pre...pregnant?

Zithu nodded looking unbothered.

Tiana: what do you mean? you know you have to heal first. I mean its not like we are ready yet. I mean we need time.. what am I saying?

Zithu laughed at confused Tiana trying to understand the situation and analyse it without having to say the wrong words.

Zithu: save the explaining for grandpa. he is the one who said I wasn't sick its only because I am lazy.

Tiana: I think I need to use the bathroom.

Zithu: really?

Tiana: yes!!

she walked towards the bedroom door.

Zithu: we have the bathroom right here? have you forgotten?

Tiana turned to look at the bathroom door.

Tiana: oh!

she hurried in and closed the door. Zithu laughed.

- NEXT DAY (AFTERNOON) -
- AT GRANDPA'S HOUSE -

Grandpa: oh I am sorry to hear this. its truly sad news and I am glad you took a decision to come here and protect yourself I don't know why these man thinking hitting a woman makes them strong? they are only peace of dogs with no heart and having their tails in between their legs. nx

Zithu: its okay now grandpa because at least here we know she is safe.

Grandpa: of cause. no one will ever get in here without my approval. and if that man tried he will get what he wants. Amanda my child

Sponsored

he will get what he wants. Amanda my child you will be ok.

Amanda smiled and nodded.

Amanda: Thank you grandpa for agreeing to let me stay here and thank you Zithu and Tiana for helping me when my mind was all over the place. My child is safe because of you 2.

Grandpa: haisuka its nothing.

Zithu: well with you staying here you can take care of my grandfather and he wont be lonely anymore. that way I am at ease.

Grandpa: haisuka you think I am afraid of spiders like you?

Zithu: grandpa.

they laughed.

- DAYS LATER -

- THE MAIN HOUSE -

Zithu: Tiana would you stop.

Tiana laughed

she sprinkled the water from the water pipe on the air and it drizzled on Zithu as if it was rain. then pointed the pipe to the direction of the garden.

Zithu: Mami mahn!

Tiana laughed then went to switch off the tap.

she walked to where Zithu was.

Tiana: its been a while since I saw you smile like this.

Zithu: pshh.

Tiana: is work hectic?

Zithu: (sigh) look at me now I am wet.

Tiana: wet?

Zithu: yes you got water all over me.

Tiana: ohhhh!!

Zithu: Tiana what were you thinking?

Tiana: mhm?

Zithu: what did you think I meant?

Tiana: nothing. why would you think I thought what you thought?

Zithu just looked at her with the "are you sure" look.

Tiana: you have a dirty mind and for your own info girls get wet boys get hard.

Zithu: Mami?? I didn't say anything about that. I don't think I was even thinking that.

Tiana looked at him and looked away walking to the house.

Zithu: Mami are you going to leave me here?

Tiana: angithi uyaphapha.

Zithu: at least tell Josh to bring my gloves wheeling this without gloves hurt.

she didn't look back she continued walking.

Zithu chuckled and shook his head.

"naughty girl"

CHAPTER 24

- DAYS LATER (EVENING) -
- AT THE MAIN HOUSE -

Tiana moved closer to Zithu and they started kissing. The kiss heated up as Tiana's hands moved in Zithu's shirt caressing his skin.

Zithu held her hand as she was sliding down to his pants.

Zithu pulled out the kiss and looked at Tiana asking a question.

Zithu: what are you doing?

Tiana: huh..... I am sorry I just got carried away.

Zithu: (clears throat) I think we .. have to sleep. remember I have an appointment tomorrow morning.

Tiana: mhm... I think so too.

Tiana slowly went back to her side and pulled the blankets over her head. yes she was embarrassed but understood that Zithu might need more time.

Zithu facing the other side shut his eyes and softly sighed then swallowed.

- NEXT DAY DURING THE NIGHT -

_____ IN A DREAM

A Car driving towards him as he looked at the car in shock.

Before he could know it the car was close he shut his eyes screaming.

_____ END OF
DREAM _____

he quickly opened his eyes as he got up leaning his elbows on the bed with his head raised up. he was breathing heavily and sweating.

Tiana didn't wake up she just moved and went into another sleeping promotion.

Zithu looked at Tiana and sighed in relieve that he didn't wake her up.

he slowly laid back calming himself down. he then stared at the ceiling and ran the same scene over and over in his head. he tried thinking about something else but he couldn't.

- LATER THAT MORNING -

Doc: ok last walk around the pole again.

Zithu: (breathing) I don't think I can its becoming painful.

Doc: ok lets give it a rest. we will do it after a few minutes.

Zithu: mhm.

Zithu sat on his wheelchair and leaned his head back.

Doc: you are doing good. if you keep at this process you might be able to walk freely in 2/3 months.

Zithu: mhm I am glad.

Doc: you don't look glad though?

Zithu: (sigh) its just my own issues.

Doc: want to share?

Zithu: (sigh) Doc can you recommend pills that will knock me out at night.

Doc: what? why?

Zithu: I keep having dreams about the accident.

Doc: how intense is it?

Zithu: I cant really say its very intense but sometimes it keeps me up till the morning.

Doc: ok I would recommend that you go back to therapy just to make sure you get help before this turns into something unresolvable. rather prevent it now.

Zithu: you know I hate therapy.

Doc: Therapy can be done in many ways if you are not ready to get a professional again then start by talking to your wife. tell her about the accident and how it affected you.

Zithu: I don't want to talk about it.

Doc: come on Zithu its for your health.

Zithu: just the thought of doing therapy again gives me a headache. so I am looking out for my health here.

Doc: Zithu!

The door opened and Tiana walked in.

Tiana: done?

Doc: Not yet we are taking a short break. and I am also trying to convince your husband to start going for therapy sessions.

Tiana: Therapy?

Doc: mhm but he wont listen.

Zithu: what's the use telling Tiana she wont make me change my mind

Sponsored

I have decided.

Tiana: why would he need Therapy?

Doc: due to the accident we want to make sure it doesn't affect him in the future.

Zithu: well I am fine. its been months now.

Tiana: (looks at Zithu) maybe you should go just encase.

Zithu: I think I rested enough lets do the remaining laps doc.

Doc sighed and nodded.

he handed Zithu the crutches and he used them to start walking around the marked stamps on the floor.

- LATER THE SAME DAY -

Zithu was outside alone.

he asked Josh to bring him outside then told him to head back in the house because he wanted to be alone outside.

he was seated on his wheelchair as he looked at his garden.

his phone rang and he just knew it was Lwazi even though the numbers were not saved.

Zithu: Lwazi?

Lwazi: ahh! how did you know it was me?

Zithu: gut feeling. what is it?

Lwazi: please speak to your aunt.

Zithu: my aunt? your mom?

Lwazi: the one and only.

Zithu: what is going on?

Lwazi: she wants me to take responsibility.

Zithu: (sigh) the girl?

Lwazi: mhm. its either I marry her or I take care of her until she becomes independent then we can separate.

Zithu: I don't see anything wrong with the options.

Lwazi: come on Zithu. for 1 I cant marry her I don't love her. for 2 I have a life I don't need someone playing 'wifey' in my house.

Zithu: you should have thought of that before knocking her up.

Lwazi: (sigh) I take it you wont help me.

Zithu: sorry boy I wasn't there when you were enjoying her so I cant tell you what option to choose or create a third option.

Lwazi: thank you so much for you help.

Zithu: its a pleasure I am glad I could help. are you still in Swaziland?

Lwazi: mxm.

Lwazi hung up and Zithu looked at her phone and chuckled as he put the phone on his lap and continued to look at the Garden.

it was preddy cold rain was even promising to visit earth but he was just there outside not even wearing something warm.

Zithu wheeled himself to the gate and used his keys to open the gate he wheeled himself out and took a stroll by himself around the block.

It started drizzling.

Tiana came out running to get Zithu but noticed that he wasn't around the yard. she ran around the house looking for him but couldn't find him.

she ran in the house looking for Josh and found him on the stairs.

Tiana: Josh where is Zithu?

Josh: he is outside near the Garden. that's where he asked me to leave him.

Tiana: he isn't there its drizzling outside and he isn't anywhere in the yard.

Josh: in the bedroom?

Tiana immediately ran up to the bedroom but still didn't find him there.

she opened the other guest rooms looking for him but still she couldn't find him.

Josh went to check the outside Camera and saw Zithu wheeling himself out of the gate.

he ran to Tiana after seeing her rushing to the backyard.

Josh: Mrs Khoza.??

Tiana turned to Josh.

Josh: Mr Khoza wheeled himself out of the gate.

Tiana: what?? it has started raining outside where was he going?

Josh: I think he might have tried wheeling himself to the park. he really loves it there.

Tiana: but its far come lets go hurry!!

they ran out but as they ran out they saw Zithu at the gate looking at the door while being soaked in water.

he looked numb.

CONTINUATION OF 24

- AT THE MAIN HOUSE -

- NARRATOR -

Tiana ran to the gate held Zithu's wheelchair and wheeled him in the house.

Tiana: please go close the gate.

Tiana said to Josh before entering with Zithu in the house Josh nodded.

Tiana wheeled him and headed to the stairs.

Zithu wasn't saying anything he just kept his head bowed down.

Josh later came in and helped Tiana take Zithu upstairs.

Tiana came behind them with the wheelchair.

when they arrived on the upper floor she put the wheelchair right and Josh put Zithu on the wheelchair. She wheeled her to their room.

as they walked in Tiana rushed in the bathroom and ran a bath for him a warm bath.

she came out of the bathroom holding a towel.

she went to Zithu and took his shoes off socks off jacket and shirt off.

she did all this without even saying anything. Zithu kept looking at her and looking away.

Zithu was now left with his pants and no top.

Tiana: hold on to me I am going to take out your pants.

Zithu looked at her but couldn't say a word.

Tiana: don't even try stopping me from helping. or arguing with me I am not in the mood.

Zithu looked down still not saying anything.

Tiana held him and helped him up. as Zithu held onto Tiana Tiana reached for his pants button. Slowly and Carefully she took his pants down then let him sit again and then pulled the pants out.

Tiana: come.

she helped him up again and slowly walked with him in the bathroom.

she headed to the bathtub. with some difficulty she managed to help him get in the bathtub.

after putting him in the bathtub she undressed.

Zithu looked at her wondering what she was doing.

Zithu: what are you doing?

Tiana: I was also caught by the rain I want to warm my body up.

Zithu: oh...

he then looked down as he looked at the water that was covering his body.

after a while Tiana came towards the Bathtub.

Tiana: can you I move you forward I would like to sit behind you.

Zithu: are you crazy? why would you want to come in here?

Tiana: because I want to.

Zithu:

Zithu looked at Tiana and Tiana was just serious no trace of a smile was left on her face.

Zithu nodded anyway.

Tiana helped Zithu move forward then she entered behind him and sat down.

she leaned back and pulled Zithu towards her so that he leans on her.

Zithu: what are you doing?

Tiana: making you comfortable.

Zithu: you acting like this is making me uncomfortable maybe you should stop.

Tiana: I am not acting.

Zithu: what is it? I cant bare guessing anymore. are you angry?

Tiana: if I was I wouldn't be here with you in the bath.

Zithu: then what is it?

Tiana: can you just keep quiet and relax.

Zithu didn't say anything. he just leaned back.

Tiana held him and starting running her fingers on his shoulders while playing with water.

- AT THE KEKANA'S -

Slindile: right now I wish I was Tiana I mean imagine what she could be doing right now?

Jay: eating like a Queen.

Slindile: plus she loves food hai.

Jay: I just want to see how she reacts to those fancy food. you know

Sponsored

I mean imagine what she could be doing right now?

Jay: eating like a Queen.

Slindile: plus she loves food hai.

Jay: I just want to see how she reacts to those fancy food. you know the sushi and all.

Slindile: would she even eat it nje?

they laughed.

Keisha: she can eat well and live like a Queen but that wont change the fact that her husband is a cripple and a monster.

Jay: hai wena you are just jealous nje.

Slindile: futhi angazi why because you had your shot and lost it. it could have been you living like that.

Keisha: mina I want a man that can carry me around pick me up and also to take pictures with. I wouldn't be able to do that with Zithu and his mask.

Jay: vele why does he wear that mask?

Slindile: rumour says its because he got a burn or something from the car accident. I bet its a terrible scar but how bad can it be to be covered with a mask?

Jay: we should ask Tiana.

Slindile: Tiana?

Jay: she sleeps in the same room as him so she must be seeing that scar every single day.

Slindile: lucky her. not only is she sleeping next to thee CEO but a handsome one.

Jay: Dad is unfair why didn't he arrange our weddings.

Slindile: my wedding wena you are a guy.

Jay: hai phela nam I am into guys. and sleeping next to a buff chest is goals girl. I don't care whether he is cripple or flipple mina I will take care of him shame.

Keisha: hai suka all for words we all know beauty counts.
Slindile: for wena girl not us. if I love someone I don't care whether rich poor cripple blind or what if my hearts wants then I will go for it.

Keisha just ignored them but was still thinking about it.

- NEXT DAY (MORNING) -
- AT THE MAIN HOUSE -

Zithu had woken up first he looked at Tiana who was still sleeping.

Zithu smiled while looking at her.

Zithu is not only trying to forget about the accident. but he also feels like he has become a burden to Tiana and Tiana wont say anything because she is his wife.

he feels like Tiana might just grow tired and breakout. he doesn't want to experience that.

- MINUTES LATER -

Zithu was watching TV when Tiana woke up.

Zithu looked at her.

Zithu: morning Mami.

Tiana smiled and stretched herself as she yawned.

Tiana: look who woke up early today.

Zithu: (smile) if I knew how to walk on my own anywhere around this house I would have made you breakfast.

Tiana: you saying good morning to me is enough breakfast.

Zithu smiled.

Tiana: Zithu?

Zithu: mhm.

Tiana: I didn't want to say this yesterday because I wanted you to rest. but...

Zithu: (sigh) can we not talk about it.

Tiana: Zithu we have to talk about it.

Zithu: well I don't want to talk about it.

Tiana: Zithu?

Zithu: TIANA I SAID NO!!

CHAPTER 25

- NEXT DAY (MORNING)-
- THE MAIN HOUSE -
- NARRATOR -

Miss Zikalala was here again They have let her in and she was sitting in the living room waiting for Zithu who was still wrapping up in his study with a zoom meeting with a client.

Tiana came down to serve Miss Zikalala while she waits for Zithu.

She came holding a tray with a glass of juice.

Tiana: here you go.

Miss Zikalala: oh thank you.

she reached for the juice and looked at Tiana.

she scanned her from her hair to her shoes.

Miss Zikalala: (fake smile) you know if I was dating someone like Mr Khoza I would really check myself.

Tiana: excuse me?

Miss Zikalala: I mean Mr Khoza is the CEO of one of the biggest company in the country his wife should somehow live up to the status don't you think?

Tiana looked at how she was dressed and held her dress tightly.

Miss Zikalala: I am sure Mr Khoza can use his money in a good way. I mean you need some work. that old hair style dirty face crappy clothing fashion and

she took one look again from down to up.

Miss Zikalala: childish look wont make Mr Khoza feel good about himself.

Tiana: (chuckles) let me guess I should be like you. fresh weave nice dress nice body long legs and clean face right?

Miss Zikalala: exactly (smiles) don't get me wrong Tiana I am not speaking against your preferred fashion I am just giving advice.

Tiana: its Mrs Khoza for you. and thank you for your advice but I will pass.

Miss Zikalala: you sure? I mean are you not afraid that Mr Khoza might just end up in another woman's arms?

Tiana: well when my husband has grown tired of my old fashion and dirty face I will call you for some useful advice.

Tiana grabbed the glass of juice that Miss Zikalala was holding and walked out of the living room leaving Miss Zikalala shocked and surprised and a bit confused.

Tiana walked up to the kitchen leaving the juice and tray on the table. she then walked up the stairs where she bumped into Zithu being helped down the stairs.

Zithu: Mami Thank you for taking care of my guest.

Tiana: (fake smile) mhm.

she then continued walking passed Zithu.

Zithu looked at her in confusion clearly noticing that she just faked a smile.

he went to attend to Miss Zikalala.

Tiana arrived in their room and she threw herself on the bed watching TV but her mind still running what Miss Zikalala said.

FLASHBACK

Miss Zikalala: (fake smile) you know if I was dating someone like Mr Khoza I would really check myself.

Tiana: excuse me?

Miss Zikalala: I mean Mr Khoza is the CEO of one of the biggest companies in the country his wife should somehow live up to the status don't you think?

_____END OF
FLASHBACK_____

Tiana shook her head and got off the bed heading to the bathroom. she looked at herself through the mirror.

she looked at her hand braided hair. "what's wrong with braids?" she asked herself.

she looked at her face. she was taken back to her high school years when she was bullied for having pimples on her face. at first she thought it was "puberty" but as she grew

Sponsored

don't you think?

_____END OF
FLASHBACK_____

Tiana shook her head and got off the bed heading to the bathroom. she looked at herself through the mirror.

she looked at her hand braided hair. "what's wrong with braids?" she asked herself.

she looked at her face. she was taken back to her high school years when she was bullied for having pimples on

her face. at first she thought it was "puberty" but as she grew she realized that others were getting their smooth skin back but she remained with pimples.

she tried every home remedy she was able to do but nothing worked. other recommendations were expensive so she said she would buy them when she had money. later in the years she bought others that she could save for but still nothing worked.

Tiana touched her rough face focusing the pressure on the pimples. as she did this she wondered "is Mr Khoza embarrassed by this?"

Words started filling her mind as she looked at herself.

~~~~~  
~~~~~

" Mr Khoza: why does it seem like you might eat us living in this house?"

"Mr Khoza: are you a pig?"

"Mr Khoza: well pardon me I didn't think you were human when I saw how much you eat and how you eat it resembled more of a pig."

"Mr Khoza: you really have to learn to keep time imagine if we had to go somewhere important. (sigh) as a wife you are supposed to be making things easier for me not make it worse."

"Mr Khoza: I didn't say anything I mean I never argue with frogs when they claim to be the most beautiful creatures in the world. I just blame Disney. "

"Mr Khoza: seems like I got myself a devil."

"Mr Khoza: right they always say "beauty is in the eyes of the beholder" even though other people don't see it its ok. what you see is what matters."

~~~~~  
~~~~~  
~~~

As she ran the words in her mind she looked down and held the dress she was wearing. she loved it she really did.

she smiled while blinking her tears away.

Tiana: does Zithu really find me ugly and unattractive? am I just a pig to him?

she asked her self as she looked at herself again in the mirror.

Tiana: is he only getting along just because we were arranged to marry? is that why he doesn't even talk to me about his life and what is wrong with him? he finds me useless and stupid.

she swallowed and sighed. she walked back in her room and just watched TV.

- LATER -

Zithu was done with his meeting and just wheeled himself I their room.

he smiled making his way near the bed where Tiana was laying.

Zithu: what is my wife busy with?

Tiana sat up.

Tiana: meeting done?

Zithu: mhm.

Tiana: is there anything you would like me to do for you? would you like coffee or anything to eat?

Zithu looked at her suspiciously.

Zithu: its still early to be making Lunch.

Tiana: yah I wanted to prepare early.

Zithu: are you okay?

Tiana: mhm I am fine. I just wanted to make sure you are okay.

Zithu: I am.

Tiana smiled.

Zithu: Tiana!

Tiana quickly looked at him and responded.

Tiana: mhm?

Zithu: does this have to do with last night? I already told you I was sorry I wasn't really thinking .....

Tiana: (interrupted) no its not. its not.

Zithu: then what is it? you are acting weird.

Tiana: nothing.

Zithu: mhm...

Tiana smiled and watched the TV

a moment later there was an advert about ponds face wash.

Tiana: ohhh do you think that product could work on my face? will I have a clean face?

Zithu: I don't know. but the way I look at it your face may need surgery to be smooth.

don't get him wrong he was didn't mean it in a serious way but the issue is that he said that at a wrong time. although Zithu and Tiana play with each other using such harsh words this time Tiana was fragile and in the stage of insecurity so saying such thing whether as a joke or sarcasm it will come as clean to her.

So Tiana looked at him and looked down disappointed. she didn't receive the sarcasm of the sentence nor the joke she only received the statement which crushed her down internally.

## CHAPTER 26

- NEXT DAY (MORNING) -

- AT THE MAIN HOUSE -  
- TIANA -

I was in the kitchen preparing dinner when Miss Moisa walked in.

Miss Moisa: wow! you have gotten better.

Me: I have to get better

Miss Moisa: (smiles) its great that you are really trying your best its better then just being pure lazy.

Me: mhm...

I said as I focused so strongly on what I was doing.

I opened the toaster at exactly 4 minutes and took out the bread and placed it on the plate. I poured juice.

Miss Moisa: something different that's nice.

Me: (sigh) lets hope he likes it.

Miss Moisa smiled giving me a thumps up and I took the tray and walked up to the bedroom.

Recently I let him have breakfast in the bedroom its easy and convenient no need to go up and down the stairs.

I get up and head in the bedroom. Zithu was on the bed watching TV.

Me: good morning!!

Zithu looked at me as I walked towards him with the tray.

Me: here I made something different for you.

Zithu: what is that?

Me: toasted chicken mayo bread.

Zithu: mhm... I love that. its one of my favourite.

Me: really?

Zithu: mhm I hope you didn't burn the bread though it would be a turn off (laughed)

Me: well luckily I didn't. I am not so much of a useless wife now am I?

Zithu: you are getting better.

I smiled as she also sat next to Zithu with the tray on his lap.

Zithu took a bite and looked at me while nodding his head.

Zithu: wow nicely done.

Me: you think (smiles)

Zithu: what inspired this breakfast? I can tell you gave it your all.

Me: mhm nothing inspired it I just wanted to make something different.

Zithu: mhm.. I like it. I love you.

I smiled at him felt good.

we had our breakfast

After enjoying breakfast we put our dishes on the tray on the drawer. Then he leaned back as I laid on his chest.

Me: Zithu!

Zithu: mhm.

Me: huh... I wanted to talk to you about school.

Zithu: School? you want to go to school?

Me: not going to school I am okay with doing online classes.

Zithu: ok what do you want to study?

Me: mhm nursing caretaker or being a teacher teaching at a primary school.

Zithu: mhm...

Me: what is it?

Zithu: nothing I just..... I Just I am just happy that you are getting on your feet.

I smiled and nodded.

Me: and another thing I would like to ask you a favour.

Zithu: what is it?

Me: can you buy me some clothing.

Zithu: clothing?

Me: mhm. I only have these granny clothes I would like to also have stylish clothing to wear not expensive but just nice.

Zithu: I don't have an issue with you getting new clothing but why all of a sudden?

Me: come on Zithu you are a big CEO of a big company

**Sponsored**

your wife should represent you at all times. I am sure you wouldn't want to be seen with a granny looking person like me.

Zithu: and where does that come from?

Me: isn't it obvious? I have to match your status.

Zithu: should I get you a mask too?

me: huh?

Zithu: since you want to compliment my style and be more like me then buying a mask can make a complete look.

I looked at him not knowing what he meant.

me: I am confused.

Zithu: you watch too much Movies I think this school thing might work well.

Me: come on Zithu please.

Zithu: fine. do you even have a bank account.

Me: don't nyats me. I do. I have done some part time jobs.

Zithu: like?

me: Cleaning!

Zithu: of cause. (sigh) ok we will go together then.

Me: really?? shopping with me?

Zithu: I am not going there as "couple goals" I am only going there to make sure you don't spend a lot.

Me: mxm... Stingy man. other rich man are giving their wife's black cards. they don't even set a limit.

Zithu: well I don't have a black card blue card of pink card. I only have a debit card.

Me: so much for having a rich husband.

Zithu: well my loving gold digger as you can see there is no much gold to dig here.

Me: well I am also after your heart. so I do have some gold to dig.

Zithu smiled and kissed me on my forehead.



Zithu: Mami please stay with me forever? don't change on me.

Me: I will only change for you.

Zithu smiled and Tiana kissed him on the lips and smiled.

- LATER -

I just finished unbraiding my hair. it has been braided for a while now. since the day before my wedding.

I had a lot of dandruff and some dirt so I have to wash it.

My hair is not in a good condition it always breaks off.

I was unbraiding the last cornrow when Zithu wheeled himself in the bedroom.

Zithu: you are still in here?

Me: mhm did you want me to do something for you?

Zithu: no. I just missed you.

Me: (smiles) liar

Zithu: haibo I am serious.

Me: mhm.. well I didn't miss you. actually I was just getting some peace from you.

Zithu: ohhhh so sad..

he faked a sad face and I laughed.

Me: do you want to wash my hair?

Zithu: why would I wash the hair of some girl who doesn't even miss me?

Me: because that girl loves you and you are her husband

Zithu: ok sold.

he wheeled himself closer to me.

Me: lets go to the bathroom or else you will find my hair everywhere on the bed its sheds a lot when you comb it.  
Zithu: ok.

we went to the bathroom and I handed him the shampoo. its actually the first time I use it. it was bought by the helper along with other toiletries but I never used it. I fetched it along with its conditioner today from my old room before unbraiding my hair.

I handed it to him and he looked at it.

Zithu: what do I do with this?

Me: just put it in your hands rub your hands together then rub your hands on my hair I want to see foam on my hair.

Zithu: okay.

I kneeled down and he started by wetting my hair and already my hair was falling in the bathtub along with the water and swimming down the drain.

Zithu: it feels like that thing that you use to wash dirty stained pots.

Me: hhaaaa!! skiripot?

Zithu: mhm

Me: mxm. don't lie.

Zithu: (laughs) I am just joking but I am not  
me: suka. Scar.

Zithu: nawe Mami!!

I smiled still closing my eyes so that water wouldn't come in my eyes.

## CHAPTER 27

- DAYS LATER (EVENING)-
- AT THE MAIN HOUSE -
- NARRATOR -

Tiana: are you sure about this?

Zithu: isn't that supposed to be my line?

Tiana: I am worried about your legs. wont it get hurt?

Zithu: my ankles will be fine and my wound will also be fine as long as you don't go crazy.

Tiana: .....

Tiana leaned in and kissed Zithu again. they French kissed.

Zithu was laying on his back while Tiana was on him on her knees.

Tiana ran her hands under Zithu's shirt.

Zithu: ahhhh (laughs) your hands are cold.

Tiana: (laughs) I know.

They continued kissing as they started undressing. Tiana carefully took out his pants.

Zithu was full and ready.

Tiana took the lead and was the one leading the deed since Zithu was still "sick".

Woman on top was all they did from the beginning to the end.

We wouldn't say she was the best that Zithu has ever felt but she wasn't bad either. Zithu was satisfied.

The deed was done in the most satisfying and careful way even though Zithu got hurt just a little.

It was the first time Zithu experienced sleeping with a woman in this condition it wasn't easy and free as when you are free but it wasn't impossible.

After the deed Tiana laid on him and took some time to catch her breath.

she reached for the lamp on Zithu's side and switched it off. it was the only lamp on. before the deed she asked to only switch on one lamp.

Zithu: and then?

Tiana: just.

Zithu: shy?

Tiana: sleep Zithu.

Zithu: but I want to talk to my Mami.

Tiana: mxm. talk alone then.

Zithu pulled her closer to him and kissed her all over her face.

Tiana: Zithu!

Zithu: Mami!

Tiana: seep.

Zithu: I don't want.

Tiana: ok then don't sleep but let me sleep.

Zithu: I don't want.

Zithu smiled waiting for Tiana to respond.

Tiana: Zithu?

Zithu: I don't want.

Tiana: Zithu man I am serious. I want to ask something

Zithu: mhm?

Tiana: ..... what is your Type?

Zithu: type?

Tiana: yah like in woman. which type of woman is your type?

Zithu: you.

Tiana: I am serious here. I mean woman like Miss Zikalala or other woman. which is your type?

Zithu: you you you. you are my type.

Tian: Zithu!

Zithu: I am serious. you are my type and only you. I like how you are. just how you are don't change anything because of influence. ok?

Tian: ..... mxm.. go sleep.

Zithu smiled and kissed Tiana on the forehead again.

Zithu: don't dream about me I am too expensive.

Tiana laughed

Tiana: mxm.

- NEXT DAY -

- AT THE COMPANY -

Zithu: I told you Lwazi there is nothing I can do for you.

Lwazi: ok can I ask you for a favour then?

Zithu: what is it?

Lwazi: grandpa froze my cards and said I will only get it back when I do the right thing mom doesn't want me in her house with that girl. she says since I am a father now I should go fend for my family on my own.

Zithu: don't tell me you want to move in my house with your girl? if that's the case then my answer is no.

Lwazi: no no. I knew you would say no. all I am asking is for you to lend me some money to get accommodation.

Zithu: why not get grandpa to unfreeze your cards to get accommodation?

Lwazi: he also said he is suspending my cards because I decided to do what I want and get a girl pregnant so he cut me off to fend for myself.

Zithu: kodwa Lwazi did you ever think about this when you were on her?

Lwazi: can we not talk about that right now. will you help me or?

Zithu: what does Nkululeko say?

Lwazi: Zithu you are the only person I can talk to right now. I fee like my family turned against me and now I am alone.

Zithu: (sigh) fine.... will you be staying in Swaziland or coming here?

Lwazi: her paperwork is not done and we will need her parents consent she is underage.

Zithu: (sigh) ok.. find a neat and healthy accommodation then send me their number I will make the payment to them directly.

Lwazi: you can just send me the cash and I will pay.

Zithu: do you think I am stupid? you will take the money and go spoil your play girls out there. I only agreed to cover your rent.

Nkululeko opened the door and popped his head in to get approval

More New African Novels PDF Downlaod Here:

[www.eBooksteach.Com](http://www.eBooksteach.Com)

**Sponsored**

I will make the payment to them directly.

Lwazi: you can just send me the cash and I will pay.

Zithu: do you think I am stupid? you will take the money and go spoil your play girls out there. I only agreed to cover your rent.

Nkululeko opened the door and popped his head in to get approval Zithu signalled for him to enter and he walked in.

Lwazi: (sigh) ok ok. I will do that then.

Zithu: did grandpa say when he will give you access again?

Lwazi: no. he only said its a punishment and left it like that.

Zithu: good luck to fending for yourself.

Lwazi: if that luck existed I wouldn't be in this situation. I am only wishing that that girl is not carrying my child.

Zithu: just man up and stop your complaints.

Lwazi: thank you Zithu and please don't tell anyone that I asked for your help especially Nkululeko he will tell grandfather.

Zithu: so?

Lwazi: then you will be in trouble and be forced to stop looking for me in the name of "punishment". please

Zithu.

Zithu: you owe me.

Lwazi: big time.

Zithu: ok I have to go. start gathering your life and gain grandfather's trust again.

Lwazi: mhm..

Zithu hung up and looked at Nkululeko.

Nkululeko: you are spoiling him.

Zithu: who?

Nkululeko: Lwazi.

Zithu: well he is being punished now so I hope he learns.

Nkululeko: punished?

Zithu: grandpa stopped his cards aunt told him to look out for himself and his girl. he is sent out the world to fight for himself.

Nkululeko: he needs this. maybe he will grow up.

Zithu: you know he wont cope.

Nkululeko: I hope you are not planning on helping him.

Zithu: and have grandpa punishing me? no I wont do that. but still Lwazi wont survive. you know that.

Nkululeko: grandpa should have done this sooner he is just being strengthened.

Zithu: at this age? what happened to "you cant teach an old dog new tricks?"



Nkululeko: if you don't try you will live to regret. you have seen how reckless he has been. I wouldn't be surprised to know that that girl is not the only girl carrying his child.

Zithu: haibo? meaning?

Nkululeko: for all we know he has been planting his seed everywhere so we can never know how many seeds fell on dry ground and how many fell on good ground. and how many grew and became the fruits of his works.

Zithu: ..... (laughs) enough about Lwazi how is the contract going?

- AT THE MAIN HOUSE -

- TIANA -

I was in my room watching TV when my phone suddenly rang.

I checked the caller ID and smiled as I answered.

Me: Scar wami

Zithu: Mami wami you sound happy.

Me: because you called.

Zithu: wow! I am touched.

Me: (smiles) ai suka.

Zithu: anyway I miss you.

Me: I miss you more. I don't have anyone to pick a word fight with

Zithu: (laughs) uyahlanya wena.

Me: still working?

Zithu: mhm. and I need a massage my back hurts.

Me: I told you not to overwork yourself.

Zithu: I wasn't.

Me: mhm.. well hurry back home to get a massage ok?

Zithu: mhm.. I will hurry back as soon as I am done.

Me: ok. See you soon.

Zithu: mhm...

Voice: Mr Khoza I just finished filing this you can have a look.

as I heard that voice somehow I started feeling down and insecure.

Zithu: Mami I will call you once I knock off ok?

Me: mhm.

Zithu: don't miss me too much.

Me: (soft smile) mhm.. hurry back.

Zithu: ok bye!

I didn't say anything he hung up and I placed my phone down trying to not think about anything negative.

## CHAPTER 28

- WEEKEND -
- AT THE MAIN HOUSE -
- NARRATOR -

Zithu was sitting in the living room waiting for Tiana to get done and come down.

as he was sitting on his wheelchair his mind remembered Grandmothers words.

---

FLASHBACK

---

" Gogo: communication is everything in a relationship its important that you talk things out before you let emotions take place. Mami is the type of person that you have to spell everything out. that's how stupid she is. you cant say things and let her read between the lines she wont be able to. she jokes a lot but that's because she hides a lot of pain in her. she is quick to listen and try her best to be there for everyone but she doesn't want anyone to be there for her. that's my Mami. she has been like that ever since. to her the happiness of others matter then her own happiness. that's how selfless she is. and sometimes people take advantage of that and she doesn't see."

---

END OF FLASHBACK

---

More New African Novels PDF Downlaod Here:

[www.eBooksteach.Com](http://www.eBooksteach.Com)

He sighed and looked at his fingers as Tiana walked in the living room.

Tiana: all done.

Zithu: you literally took forever to get done I almost fell asleep right here waiting for you.

Tiana: don't lie I didn't take long it was few minutes.

Zithu: whatever lets get going Palo is already outside waiting in the car.

Tiana: ok.

Tiana held Zithu's wheelchair and wheeled him out to the car.

when they got to the car Tiana helped Zithu in the car and Palo took the wheelchair in the boot while Tiana also got in the car then they drove out.

- MINUTES LATER -

They arrived at the mall.

Tiana helped Zithu out the car and put him on the wheelchair.

Palo: may I assist?

Zithu: no need Palo thank you. you can wait here in the car and relax until we come back. Close the windows open the air conditioner lower the chair and sleep. we will wake you up when we arrive.

Palo smiled as Tiana laughed.

Tiana: better do that uncle Palo its an opportunity you can never miss.

Palo: (smiles) I will definitely do that.

Zithu: uncle Palo? you still haven't stopped calling Palo that? (looks at Palo) Palo you are okay with someone making you look old?

Palo: (smiles) its ok sir.

Zithu: mhm. ok. whatever makes you happy.

Tiana: (smiles) ok lets go my scar.

Zithu: I have a feeling this is about to be a very long shopping time.

Tiana: you could have just given me your card and let me go crazy.

Zithu: that's my biggest fear.

Palo and Tiana laughed.

Tiana: lets go and save some hours.

Tiana wheeled him in the mall.

they wheeled around while looking at the shops that were in the mall.

Zithu: which shop are we going to?

Tiana: any if I see something that interest me we will go in and check.

Zithu: mhm ok. I hope you find everything in one shop.

Tiana: (laughs)

They passed the Fish and Chips shop. Tiana looked at it and swallowed.

Tiana: can we come here after shopping? I haven't had some fish and chips in a long time.

Zithu: of cause I know I would be in big trouble if I say no.

Tiana faked a smiled and bit her lips. she looked away and slowly wheeled Zithu.

Tiana: you don't have to buy it because I insist I don't mind.

Zithu: hai what's wrong with you? its just a joke.

Tiana: mhm. I know but still you don't have to do it because I insist.

Zithu: Tiana! (he turned his head to look at me) as long as you are happy that's what I care about. your happiness.

Tiana smiled and continued wheeling him.

First shop was Edgars.

Tiana walked in and looked around.

things were very expensive in here she couldn't believe it.

Tiana: they are so expensive.

Zithu: is there something you like?

Tiana: I love the sneakers they have and the pumps as well. but they are too expensive.

Zithu: take the one you love I don't mind paying.

Tiana: but you said you didn't want me to go over R3000.

Zithu: and you took me serious?

Tiana smiled but still nodded.

Tiana: lets go check out the other shops first I don't want regrets.

Zithu: I was avoiding that.

Tiana: (laughs) lets go.

They went into Mr Price.

Tiana really love Vintage wear but in her head it made her look old since girls were mostly into Crop tops and

tight jeans and all that. she really wanted to impress Zithu and not give Zithu any reason to have eyes somewhere else.

Zithu noticed how Tiana looked at the nice round plait dress and the straight let trousers.

Zithu: you like them?

Tiana: huh? huh... no.. why would like old woman things?

Zithu: old woman? (laughs) you are already an old woman now go try them on.

Tiana: why would I do that?

Zithu: these type of clothes suit you. they are similar to the clothing you already have.

Tiana: I thought you didn't like them.

Zithu: I don't.

Tiana: mhm?

Zithu: I don't like them but I like the one who wears them.

Tiana: (smiles) wait (suddenly serious) so every woman that wears this you like them?

Zithu: mhm

Tiana: then I will buy all these clothing from every shop standing in this world even from the suppliers and makers. then pay for the designs to be banned from ever being made again.

Zithu: (laughs) haibo

**Sponsored**

even from the suppliers and makers. then pay for the designs to be banned from ever being made again.

Zithu: (laughs) haibo why?

Tiana: then I will be the only woman who wears like this.  
and you will like only me.

Zithu: (laughs) good luck in that go fit it and see if you like it.

Tiana: mhm... ok.

Tiana went to fit and she really loved it.

Zithu was just standing outside waiting for Tiana to finish.

Tiana came out and Zithu looked at her.

Tiana: how do I look?

Zithu: like a granny.

Tiana pouted in sadness.

Zithu: my granny there is no one like you.

Tiana: mxm.

Zithu: I like it. it suits you. Mami!

Tiana: (smiles)

She went to change back to her clothing.

They continued to shop.

after a while They went to pay.

They walked out and the next stop was in Foschini.



She walked in and went around looking for something to wear but she was more into Shoes then clothing in this shop.

as she was busy looking for shoes Zithu got a call then excused himself from Tiana.

after a while Tiana was helped by a male assistant in the shop helping her choose a pair of shoe.

he was over friendly and kept laughing with Tiana.

Zithu looked at them and quickly ended his call.

he then wheeled himself to where they were.

Zithu: Love lets go.

Tiana looked at Zithu surprised that he just called her "love"

Tiana: huh.... the gentlemen here was .....

Zithu: I don't think anything is good here lets go somewhere else.

Tiana: haibo Zithu. I like.....

Zithu: now!

he looked at the assistant and then at Tiana.

Tiana: ok at least let me pay for these once the assistant here says.....

Zithu: I don't care what he says lets go

he said that wheeling himself out Confused Tiana put away the shoes as she also apologized to the assistant

Tiana: I am sorry he gets like this from time to time.  
thank you for your help.

???: its ok I would also be insecure if I was on a wheelchair with such a beautiful wife.

"beautiful?" she thought.

Tiana: Thank you for the compliment but it doesn't become a compliment if you use it to insult my husband.  
seek help while you can.

Tiana walked out following Zithu who was near a game shop looking inside.

Tiana ran to him and looked through the glass of the Game shop wanting to see what Zithu is looking at.

Tiana: are you okay? what are you looking at?

Zithu: are you done having a flirty conversation with your man?

Tiana: I was only getting started. but he seems angry.

Zithu: angry that you couldn't stay longer since I left?  
you should have I wouldn't mind staying here looking into this glass for more hours.

Tiana: well I do plan on staying with him till I die. and after I die if its possible.

Zithu: nice. wish you a happy wedding.

Tiana: we are already married.

Zithu: mhm... so who is the second husband? me or him?

Tiana: (laughs) would you stop it already. anyway what are you looking at?

Zithu: ..... My dad used to bring us here when we were young.

Tiana: us?

Zithu: me Lwazi and Nkululeko.

Tiana: you 3 are tight hai?

Zithu: Lwazi is just an annoying brat Nkululeko is just always busy these days and my dad he..... he left us. I feel so lonely.

Tiana held his shoulder and gave it a squeeze.

Tiana: hai I am here.

Zithu smiled at Tiana as Tiana smiled at Zithu giving him a wide smile

Zithu: I know. but until when?

Tiana: forever!

Zithu: (chuckles) you think?

Tiana: why? you don't think so?

Zithu: our marriage was a contract between two families a literal contract of cause we will be together forever we don't have a choice to go otherwise but what I am saying is the life of Romeo and Juliet doesn't exist. this is earth and reality hits hard.

Tiana didn't know what he meant. he wasn't being straight and Tiana being someone who can't read between the lines she was lost.

Zithu: lets go to another shop. don't mind me.

Tiana slightly nodded and wheeled Zithu to another shop.

## CONTINUATION OF 28

- AT THE MALL -  
- NARRATOR -

Tiana: Zithu I need the bathroom.

Zithu: mhm... (looking around) do you know where it is?

Tiana: (shakes head)

Zithu: I never paid attention to that lets go find it out.

Tiana: ok.

Tiana wheeled Zithu around and they asked a security who directed them to where the bathroom is and finally they found it.

Tiana: ok wait here I will be out soon.

Zithu: mhm hurry.

Zithu makes sure to not drink water when going somewhere so that he doesn't have to keep on going to the bathroom but that doesn't mean it doesn't happen that he needs a bathroom while away from home it does.

Tiana ran in the toilets and locked the door then sat down.

as she was seated down some girls walked in the bathroom talking.

Girl1: chomie but we must face it a guy can tell you that he loves you and that you are beautiful but that doesn't stop him from looking around.

Girl2: but still friend Thabo should have spoken to me told me where to change or broke up with me if he didn't love me anymore but cheating?

Girl1: I understand that you are hurt and angry but its reality. yazi my sister met a guy years ago they dated worst part the guy was on a wheelchair yezwa he couldn't walk but my sister was always there for him. months later they got married he started recovering and my sister even got pregnant. about a years and few months later he was recovered but not fully he was using one stick to walk now like an old man. he was taking care of himself now and girls were noticing him now. he loved the attention and you know what happened.

Girl2: he left your sister for some woman he met yesterday?

Girl1: exactly. he left my sister and their child at home and started going out with woman and having fun with them. my sister tried to please him thinking its her fault but nothing happened. later they divorced and as we speak my sister is with another man.

Girl2: kodwa men are trash yazi.

Girl1: not all just the ones we pick.

Girl2: kodwa shame lapho ngizom'bona uThabo ngiyom'bonisa ama bele we nyoka (wherever I will see Thabo I will show him a snakes breast.)

Girl1: hai wena!

Girl2: speaking about people in wheelchairs the brother out there is very handsome.

Girl1: mhm I feel for his girlfriend because once he starts walking

## **Sponsored**

he is gone.

Girl2: if I was the girlfriend I would make sure he doesn't walk again.

Girl1: hai moloji.

Girl2: its called being proactive.

they laughed.

Tiana sat there listening.

she looked down and sighed.

The girls finished washing their hands and fixing their lipstick then walked out still talking.

Tiana stood up flushed and walked out. she went to wash her hands and looked at the mirror.

she scanned her face before sighing again.

she then wiped her hands on her dress and walked out. she pulled a smile as she walked to Zithu.

Zithu: I almost called khumbul'ekhaya to come fetch you.

Tiana: (laughs) mxm. lets go.

she held Zithu's wheelchair and wheeled him forward.

Tiana saw some good looking girls walking around the mall she looked at Zithu who was looking at his tablet. he was looking at graphs that Tiana didn't understand.'

Tiana: Zithu?

Zithu raised his head turning to Tiana.

Zithu: mhm?

Tiana: look at all these girls in the mall which one stands out for you?

Zithu: mhm... (thinking while looking around) the one who asked me that question.

Tiana: come on Zithu apart from me who is the one that catches your eyes?

Zithu sighed and pulled her to come in front of him.

Zithu: can you come to my level.

Tiana knelt with one knee and faced Zithu.

Zithu: are you trying to sell me over?

Tiana: sell you?

Zithu: you have been indirectly asking me to look at other girls and all that. isn't that selling me?

Tiana bit her lips and looked down.

Zithu raised her face using his finger on her chin.

Zithu: Mami I know we didn't have a "normal" relationship because we fell in love when we were already married. but what matters is that we love each other. among all these woman I see only you make my heart beat faster.

Tiana: the only one who makes your heart beat faster?  
because you love me?

Zithu: no because you scare me?

Tiana bit her lips again as her eyes looked away.

Zithu: of cause because I love you. and only you. okay?

Tiana smiled and nodded.

Zithu: always remember. I love you for you. not how you  
look or anything.

Tiana smiled.

Zithu kissed her on the forehead then kissed her on the  
lips.

Tiana: Zithu we are in public.

Zithu: a perfect opportunity to let everyone know that  
you are my wife and not my helper or doctor.

Tiana smiled.

Zithu: fish and chips?

Tiana nodded quickly while smiling.

They went to fish and chips.

- MINUTES LATER -



Tiana just finished getting her hair braided. she loves braids too much but this time she used hair-piece to make the braids thicker and longer.

Zithu was sitting in the salon earphones on while listening to music and playing games to pass time.

Tiana walked to him and stood in front of her.

Zithu looked up and saw her smiling and looking cute with the freshly done braids.

Tiana: how do I look?

Zithu: are you sure you are 20? you look 16. I feel like your father.

Tiana hit him on the shoulders as the ladies who heard laughed as well.

???: well hold on to that little girl because she is a good beautiful respectful woman.

Zithu smiled.

Zithu: I will ma.

???: mhm seeing young couples makes me happy reminds me on my days. heee!

???: hai suka.

they laughed.

Zithu paid and they went out.

Zithu: I think we are done.

Tiana: you didn't even get anything for yourself.

Zithu: I have enough.

Zithu always keep his hair clean since he is a CEO. David or Josh always refresh his cut whenever it starts looking untidy.

Tiana: ok.

Tiana wheeled him to the car.

they got to the car and indeed Palo took their word and took a nap or maybe they have been in there for a while that he fell asleep.

Tiana knocked on the window and Palo woke up. as soon as he saw Zithu and Tiana he hurried and unlocked the car then got out to help them.

Zithu: it has been long right? well I almost drowned.

Palo laughed.

They got in the car and drove back home.

- LATER THAT EVENING -

it was late at night. Tiana and Zithu just got in their bed.

Zithu: ahhhh I think its time I changed the bandage.

Tiana: is the doc coming to change it tomorrow?

Zithu: no David will help me my doctor is busy with transfer things.

Tiana: transfer?

Zithu: mhm. but he assigned me another doctor so its cool.

Tiana: but the new doc wont be so close to you like Doc Moloji.

Zithu: I know. but I cant keep Doc Moloji behind just because I am close to him. he also has a life to live.

Tiana: I guess.. hai I can help you change your life.

Zithu: (looks at Tiana surprised) you will? you not afraid of wounds?

Tiana: I have to try. if I don't help who will?

Zithu smiled.

Zithu: ok you will help me tomorrow then.

Tiana: ok. do you want a massage?

Zithu: from you?

Tiana: mhm the master of massages.

Zithu: wow!

they laughed.

Tiana helped Zithu to lay on his stomach then started massaging him.

Tiana: Zithu.

Zithu: mhm?

Tiana: remember the day it was raining?

Zithu: ..... (sigh)..... about that. I am sorry I lashed out not wanting to talk to you.

Tiana: I understand. all I just want is for you to open up to me. please.

Zithu: I was just tired. tired of depending on you all the time I felt useless I felt empty I felt .....

Tiana kissed his back and his cheeks.

Tiana: you worry too much. I am here to look after you.

Zithu: I know.

Tiana: don't bottle things out rather lets talk about it.

Zithu: ok. from now on no bottling things right?

Tiana: mhm.

Zithu: good.

Tiana: I also felt useless expecially because you always say I am.

Zithu: what? you know I am just playing right?

Tiana: I know. but these days it just made me a bit insecure. I felt like you might leave me for a better person.

Zithu: ..... I might.

Tiana stopped and looked at him.

Zithu: well I might not leave you but my attention might shift.

Tiana:..... oh..... so that's the way.

Zithu: of cause. I mean are you expecting me to put you over my kids?

Tiana slowly smiled then hit Zithu on the back.

Zithu: ouch!! what did I do?

Tiana: I thought you were speaking about another woman.

Zithu: it could be a daughter.

Tiana: mxm.

they laughed.

Tiana continued to massage him.

## CHAPTER 29

- AT THE MAIN HOUSE -

- NARRATOR -

Tiana moaned on top of Zithu as she bumped up and down riding him well.

Zithu had the edge to move but his legs were in the way as they were still not fully recovered.

She went on and on as Zithu groaned grabbing Tiana's waist for dear life.

after a while Tiana sat deep making Zithu come in her as she was also coming.

First mistake no protection was used yet she was afraid of getting pregnant.

she caught her breath as she lay on his chest.

Zithu: keep my man in you and you might see him getting excited again.

Tiana: I wouldn't mind.

Zithu: (chuckles) you naughty girl.

Tiana: is your leg ok though?

Zithu: its just hard cuming when your leg is hurt.

Tiana: sorry.

Zithu: you shouldn't be sorry you should be conceiving kids and making me a proud dad.

Tiana: ahahahah not happening.

Zithu: yet you let me hit it raw.

Tiana looked away and got off Zithu and Zithu laughed.

Tiana: next time I wont let you do that.

Zithu: we will see about that. (smirk)

Tiana: mxm.

Zithu laughed.

Zithu: you know there is a saying "YESTERDAY IS HISTORY TOMORROW IS A MYSTERY BUT TODAY IS A GIFT THAT IS WHY IT IS CALLED 'THE PRESENT'"

Tiana looked at him.

Tiana: what does that mean?

Zithu: how we met is history its not that important Tomorrow is a Mystery so we cant really predict what will happen. but today is a gift. so we have to enjoy it as much as we can without worry.

Tiana: ohh. (smiles)

Zithu: are you ready for kids?

Tiana: kids?

Zithu: mhm. if you are not ready then I have to know to never listen to you and always wear protection but if you are ready then I don't need to worry.

Tiana thought about it.

- NEXT DAY ( AFTERNOON) -

Tiana was in the bedroom on the phone with Slindile.

Tiana: but I haven't been married for long I cant come back home yet.

Slindile: you not coming for long just the weekend I really miss you. Jay is making me angry here

Tiana: (laughs) I was about to ask how he is keeping up with annoying you.

Slindile: that's pretty much all he does.

Tiana: (laughs) but still you love him and he loves you.

Slindile: why do you think I haven't killed him?

they laughed.

Tiana: ok I will speak to my husband and see if he is okay with it but I am not promising anything.

Slindile: ok no problem.

Tiana: and Keisha? how is she? she hardly speaks to me even on WhatsApp its like I did something to her.

Slindile: I don't know. she has been off lately. but I don't want to ask.

Tiana: is it about me marrying Zithu?

Slindile: I doubt phela she ran away you didnt force her to leave. so it cant be that. maybe its something private.

Tiana: I hope she pulls through.

Slindile: of cause she will.

Tiana: what about mom and dad?

Slindile: dad is doing ok obviously your marriage brought in some good benefits but mom. I don't know. I just cant figure her out.

Tiana: mhm..

Slindile: ok lovie. so tell me when are we seeing a little bump on you?

Tiana: when I fall. do you want to see it on my forehead?

Slindile: oho mahn I mean pregnancy.

Tiana laughed.

- LATER -

Tiana walked down heading to the Kitchen she met with Miss Moisa.

Tiana: Miss Moisa.

Miss Moisa: Tiana how are you?

Tiana: I am well thank you.

Miss Moisa: (smiles) I already miss your bickering with Mr Khoza.

Tiana: (laughs) please don't say that Miss Moisa.

she laughed

Tiana: anyway

**Sponsored**

thank you.

Miss Moisa: (smiles) I already miss your bickering with Mr Khoza.



Tiana: (laughs) please don't say that Miss Moisa.

she laughed

Tiana: anyway Miss Moisa you have a child already right?

Miss Moisa: mhm 2.

Tiana: may I ask how was the pains?

Miss Moisa smiled and looked at Tiana.

Miss Moisa: already??

Tiana: already? (confused)

Miss Moisa: I mean are you pregnant?

Tiana: no no Miss Moisa not yet. I was just asking just to be ready.

Miss Moisa: ohhhh I was so excited... (smiles) well about the pains to be honest it was hell. but worth it.

Tiana: I just heard hell and decided not to have kids.

Miss Moisa laughed out loud.

Miss Moisa: trust me my baby its worth the pain. the excitement the love my word I cant put it in words.

Tiana: really?

Miss Moisa: mhm. but you need to look inside of you if you are ready for a child or not. don't push it if you are not ready because it might not turn out well. I advice you to go family planning with Mr Khoza.

Tiana: family planning?

Miss Moisa: mhm let me take you through what it means.

- AT THE COMPANY -

FLASHBACK

???: hai wena Nkululeko you think we are scared of you?

Little Nkululeko stood there looking at the boys there were 3 of them.

Zithu: buti Nkululeko!!

he said that running towards them.

Zithu: what's going on here?

???: ao little boy came to save your big brother?? aggg shame (looks at Nkululeko) you let babies fight your battles.

Nkululeko: leave Zithu out of this its me you want.

???: (laughs) listen to him.

Zithu: if you want to hit Nkululeko you will have to hit me first.

the 3 guys looked at each other and laughed.

Next thing they started hitting Zithu.

as they were hitting Zithu Nkululeko wanted to run away but couldn't because Zithu was there because of him.

he got in the fight as well and tried fighting back.

Next thing they were both laying on the floor beaten up yet they laughed about how they looked and who was beat up more.

---

## END OF FLASHBACK

---

his personal phone rang and he picked it up.

Nkululeko: speak to me.

???: the tip is given the police will be sniffing around soon.

Nkululeko: did you specifically mention Zithu?

???: yes. he will be under investigation soon.

Nkululeko: good. tainting his reputation is only the beginning.

he hung up and looked at the door he sipped on his whiskey played around with it in his mouth before swallowing it.

"a strong bond could be true love or a strong hate awaiting to destroy you. there was a story about a woman who bought a pet (snake) she would feed it sleep with it and take good care of it one day it stopped eating. it starved itself and every night it would wrap itself around her. she went to ask the experts for help and they told her that the snake was preparing itself for a greater meal which was her. lesson? A STRONG BOND COULD BE TRUE LOVE OR A STRONG HATE AWAITING TO DISTROY YOU"

BE CAREFUL WHO YOU TRUST.

## CHAPTER 30

- DAYS LATER -
- AT THE MAIN HOUSE -

- NARRATOR -

Tiana: Ohhhhhh! Ohhhhhh! Zithu you are doing it!!!

Zithu smiled through his pain as he was half way through the steps walking on his crutches with David next to him just encase Zithu gets tired or cant handle the pains.

Tiana was at the bottom of the stairs looking up to Zithu and cheering him up.

Zithu normally wouldn't even rich half way so today was a huge progress and everyone was happy including Zithu. he was so happy yet still in pain.

David: sir you don't have to push too much you have done very well for today. you progressed.

Zithu: just few more. few more.

David: are you sure?

he looked at Tiana who was clapping and cheering with a wide smile and bright light.

he nodded.

Zithu: for her.

David looked at Tiana and smiled as he nodded.

David: ok sir. but don't push yourself too much.

Zithu nodded.

Zithu breathed and pushed himself to take another step with a struggle he managed to take 3 more steps down then he felt more pain.

David held him.

David: I think that's it now.

Zithu nodded as he took a moment to catch his breath. he was sweating a lot.

Tiana came up the stairs and gave Zithu a kiss on his cheek.

Tiana: you did well Mr Scar.

Zithu: Thank you Mrs Scar.

Tiana: I don't have a scar.

Zithu: my scar is your scar.

Tiana smiled and helped David return Zithu up to his wheelchair.

Tiana: thank you David.

David: no need Mrs Khoza I am only doing my job.

Tiana: still thank you for sticking to this no brain husband of mine.

Zithu: isn't that your description?

David laughed.

Tiana: I am fully brained.

Zithu didn't say anything he just smiled and shook his head.

Tiana wheeled him to the bedroom and went to get a wet cloth to wipe his face.

she returned and took off Zithu's mask.

Tiana: you really need to start taking this off you know.

Zithu: do I look handsome without it?

Tiana: yes be like Scar from lion king he embraced his scar and didn't hide it.

Zithu: it suit him because he was a bad person.

Tiana: are you not a bad person?

Zithu: what did I do?

Tiana: you stole my heart.

Zithu laughed he didn't believe Tiana just used that line on him.

Zithu: Tiana!

Tiana: I know punch line.

Zithu: mxm. just wipe my face already the sweat is starting to make me itch.

Tiana: germs.

Tiana used the cloth to wipe his face gently. after that she went to get some lotion and gently applied it on his face.

Tiana always volunteers to wipe his face every time he takes his mask off because she just likes touching the scar across Zithu's eyes.

after lotioning his face she again ran her fingers on his scar.

Zithu pulled her close.

Zithu: have you thought about what you will study?

Tiana: mhm. actually I spoke to Miss Moisa I don't think studying is for me.

Zithu: meaning?

Tiana: I mean I personally don't like the thought of textbooks and all but I would study if I really want to become that. but I rather do learn with practical work.

Zithu: okay but I don't think that's how it works.

Education is key and those with education understand the world better.

Tiana: so I have to go to school?

Zithu: if you really don't want you don't have to but you are too young to dismiss education. take hold of the opportunity while you can.

Tiana: (sigh)

Zithu: why? what is it?

Tiana: I know I always say I would like to be a nurse or caretaker but I am starting to think maybe I was carried away by the fact that I enjoyed taking care of you.

Zithu: (smiles) ncooo so you thought you would like taking care of others because you took care of me?

Tiana: I mean its not a bad idea I love taking care of others but not as a permanent career maybe part-time.

Zithu: ok then what will you do full time?

Tiana: I was thinking studying business.

Zithu: huh?

Tiana: you are running a business right so it only makes sense for me to study business to help you in things that you might need help with. I wouldn't want to be a useless wife

### **Sponsored**

while you deal with all the stress I want to share your burdens.

Zithu: but you cant Study business because of me its a wrong approach you need to study what you want what makes you happy. you need to study what you really want to study.

Tiana: (pouts)

Zithu: don't worry applications close around September if I am not mistaken just make sure you don't think too long. you only have 3 months till then.

Tiana: mhm.

Zithu: come here.

he pulled her closer and kissed her on the lips Tiana responded for a while then pulled out.

she looked at Zithu.

Tiana: promise me that you will never leave me.

Zithu: why do you think I will leave you?

Tiana: I don't want to seem useless or just a housewife to you. and I heard some people say there was once a guy who was in a wheelchair he loved his wife very much and they even got married but after the guy recovered he started looking the other direction.

Zithu: (smiles) and you think I will do that?



Tiana: everyone can have a smooth tongue we never know who to trust and who is sincere. that's why I am asking you to please not hurt me. if you feel tired of me or something please let me know what to change about myself or which direction to go. please.

Zithu: Mami! I wont get tired of you. actually I also had fear that you would grow tired of me and feel burdened once you see other guys on the streets.

Tiana: I never grow tired of you. I have fallen too deep.

Zithu: I am glad.

they smiled at each other.

- SOMEWHERE -

Jamal: wow!! this is great.

Thami: I know. its really amazing.

Jamal smiled and looked down as his smile slowly wiped off his face.

Thami: what? what is it?

Jamal: nothing just that .....

Thami: Tiana?

Jamal: ..... (sigh) I hoped I would be here with her one day. I had a lot of plans with her. I.....

Thami: can we... can we stop talking about Tiana. she decided to leave ok she decided to choose her family then you. who knows she could be happy with that man for all we know and you are here after so long you are still crying over her. don't do that.

Jamal: I just really loved her.

Thami: so?

Jamal:.....

Thami: listen she never loved you. as in like never. she just couldn't tell you because she knew that you loved her too much and it would hurt you.

Jamal shook his head saying he didn't believe her.

Thami: I am telling you. I was her friend. best friend. she told me everything. yes she loved you but not as much..... not as much as I loved you.

Jamal looked at her.

Jamal: what?

Thami: there it is I said it. yes Jamal seeing you with Tiana hurt me but I had to forget I had to swallow how I felt just so you two can be together. even when I knew that Tiana didn't love you as much as you loved her I still had to support because I didn't want to hurt you. I am sorry but I had to. seeing you happy was all that I needed to see.

Jamal: Thami?

Thami: I know I know. you don't have to say anything that will embarrassed me further. I understand that you don't love me and don't see me that way its okay I just wanted to let you know.

Jamal walked closer to Thami and held her waist.

he leaned in and Thami gave in.

They kissed.

After a while of some passionate slow kissing Jamal pulled out and looked away.

Jamal: I am sorry I shouldn't.

Thami: ..... its ok its ok.

the moment got awkward.

- NEXT DAY (LATER THAT EVENING) -

The detective arrived in the company and headed to the receptionist.

Detective: (shows his badge) Detective Mabuza I am looking for Mr Khoza?

CONTINUATION OF 30

- AT THE COMPANY -

- NARRATOR -

Zithu was in his office doing some work when his office phone rang.

he picked up.

Zithu: Mr Khoza speaking how can I help you?

Receptionist: Mr Khoza Detective Mabuza is here looking for you.

Zithu: mhm okay I am on my way.

Receptionist: ok sir.

he hung up and called Nkululeko.

Nkululeko: Zithu.

Zithu: Nkululeko I hear Detective Mabuza is downstairs looking for me can you come help me down.

Nkululeko: sure what does he want though?

Zithu: we can only find out when we get down.

Nkululeko: ok. I am on my way.

Zithu hung up and put his files away.

he texted his grandfather about something and his grandfather responded.

Nkululeko arrived and Zithu looked at him.

Nkululeko: lets go.

Zithu: mhm.

Nkululeko held Zithu's wheelchair wheeling him down and heading to the elevator.

They got down and wheeled him where the Detectives were standing.

Zithu: good evening gentlemen I heard you were looking for me?

Detective: good evening are you Mr Khoza?

Zithu: yes Zithulele Khoza.

Detective: no we are looking for Nkululeko Khoza.

Nkululeko's sneaky smirk turned into a shock when the detectives mentioned his name.

Voice: it is the one next to Zithulele Khoza.

they looked at where the Voice came from and it was their grandfather.

People in the workplace greeted in respect as he is the owner of the business.

Detective: Nkululeko Khoza?

he asked looking at Nkululeko.

Nkululeko nodded still confused why they would ask for him and not Zithu.

Nkululeko: yes I am Nkululeko Khoza is there any problem detective?

Detective: Nkululeko Khoza you are under arrest for fraud.....

Nkululeko: Fraud? what... what do you mean?

Detective: anything you say or do will be used against you in caught.....

They said as the other officers walked to him to handcuff him.

he looked at Zithu and grandfather still confused.

Nkululeko: grandpa believe me I don't know what is going on Zithu please get me a lawyer I am innocent.

Zithu: don't say anything I will sort it out.

Nkululeko nodded and obeyed as he was taken to the police van.

Grandpa: sort it out?

Zithu: it just came out.

Grandpa: that was supposed to be you he never had mercy on you. so don't grow soft boy.

Zithu sighed and turned. Grandpa wheeled him back to his office.

the hot news didn't take time before it was spread on the internet and used as hot gossip in the business world.

They got to the office and sat down.

Grandpa: now we have to do some damage control.

Zithu: (sigh) I still cant believe Nkululeko was going to drag me like that.

Grandpa: remember when I told you to never trust anyone not even family? I meant this.

Zithu: but how did Grandpa know about his plans?

Grandpa: Zithu if you would know the reason why I never trusted Nkululeko you would hate him very much. it involves his father. ever since I found out about that I knew very well that Nkululeko would walk in the footsteps of his father

### **Sponsored**

influenced by his mother.

Zithu: I don't understand Grandpa. is that the reason why you told me that if he passes the loyalty test you would hand the shares to him?

Grandpa: yes. even though I knew that he would turn like his father I really hoped he would prove me wrong. so I stayed wishing that he wouldn't. but he did.

Zithu: .....

Grandpa: I don't know if you should know this but.....  
he knew who put you in that wheelchair and almost killed  
you.

Zithu looked at Grandpa with wide eyes.

Zithu: what?

Grandpa: mhm... I wont tell you who it was I think you  
will have to ask Nkululeko himself and he will tell you.

Zithu: he knew?

Grandpa: mhm.

Zithu chuckled in disbelief and looked down.

- LATER -

- AT THE MAIN HOUSE -

Tiana was in her room making the room tidy after she  
made it untidy. her phone rang.

she froze after seeing who was calling. she looked at her  
phone and then answered.

Tiana: ..... Jamal.

Jamal: hi... I hope I am not disturbing you.

Tiana:..... no... you are not.

Jamal: huh.... (clears throat) how are you?

Tiana: I.... I am fine... what about you?

Jamal: one day at a time.

Tiana: I am glad..

Jamal: huh.... I was just checking on you.

Tiana: Thank you...

there was about 3 second silence then Jamal spoke.

Jamal: huh... are you free for drinks?

Tiana: drinks? like meeting up?

Jamal: yah if its not a problem.

Tiana: ohhh I will have to speak to my..... I mean yah why not.

Jamal: great... is weekend okay?

Tiana: yah. weekend is fine.

Jamal: usual Cafe?

Tiana: where we met?

Jamal: yah. if that's okay.

Tiana: Jamal...

Jamal: I wont try and do anything that will ruin your marriage. I understand that you are marriage and I respect that. I just want closure.

Tiana:.....

Jamal: you never gave me a chance to say goodbye

Tiana you left just like that you got married before I could even digest our breakup. I am dying here. I just need some closure an assurance that will help me move on. please.

Tiana: (sigh)..... okay... same Cafe. this weekend. around 10:00

Jamal: ok.. thank you..

Tiana: mhm..

Jamal: see you then. have a great evening.

Tiana: mhm you too.

Tiana was sad

Jamal: bye.



Tiana: bye...

Tiana removed the phone from her ear and looked at it. Jamal hung up and Tiana sighed.

- MOMENTS LATER -

Zithu arrived right in time for dinner.

Tiana: right on time I was about to call khumbul'ekhaya for you.

Zithu: (fake smile) yah.

Tiana: okay you can get Josh to take your bags up I will be up to help you change then come down for dinner.

Zithu: huh... I am good. I don't think I want to eat anything.

Tiana: really? nothing at all? did you eat at work?

Zithu: no I am just tired. very tired.

Tiana: ohhh. okay. let me help Josh take you up then I can help you get ready to sleep.

Zithu: mhm.

Tiana went to put her apron in the kitchen then helped Josh by holding the wheelchair and walking up with it while Josh held Mr Khoza.

they got up and Josh put Zithu on the wheelchair. Tiana wheeled him in the bedroom.

Tiana: how was work? you took longer today.

Zithu: mhm Nkululeko got arrested today.

Tiana: what?? what did he do?

Zithu: well if it was not him it would have been me.

Tiana: huh?

Zithu: he was going to frame me with the fraud that he committed I am so glad Grandpa kept an eye on him. if it wasn't for that I would have been arrested for a fraud I didnt commit.

Tiana: (sigh) I am not surprised.

Zithu: meaning?

Tiana: remember the day the doctor invited me in your room to change your bandage?

Zithu: mhm?

Tiana: I met him in the kitchen. and he was asking me if I wouldn't be burdened for taking care of you and if I would ever be satisfied sexually.

Zithu: why didnt you tell me that?

Tiana: I saw how you loved him I didnt want to be seen as someone who wants to destroy the family.

Zithu: (sigh) have I always been in the dark about who Nkululeko really is? what did I do to him? I mean he knew very well how I always wanted to know who caused the accident but he decided to keep it to himself.

Tiana: he knew?

Zithu: it seems like it. I am so confused right now. I feel broken. I feel.

Tiana: tired. come let me put you in bed.

Zithu didnt say anything he obeyed.

Tiana removed his mask then he took out the colour eye contacts.

Tiana went to get a cloth to wipe his face. his face gets sweaty from the cover of the mask. but he has been thinking of removing it and just accepting his scar as part

of him. of cause the people around him might react different but its something he must do.

## CHAPTER 31

### ARRANGED MARRIAGE: THE MASKED MAN 032

- 2 DAYS LATER -
- SOMEWHERE -
- NARRATOR -

Thami: what?

Jamal: ..... (sigh)

Thami: no Jamal you have to call Tiana and cancel that meeting.

Jamal: you don't understand Thami.

Thami: understand what Jamal? or have you forgotten that she is the one that left you? she left you Jamal.

Jamal: .....

Thami: Jamal nothing you say to her will make her leave her rich husband for you. she chose that marriage.

Jamal: you don't understand Thami. its not like one of us cheated and the other ended things its not like we broke up so non of our hearts were broken by each other we were good.

Thami: exactly Jamal. ya'll were good and if she loved you that much she wouldn't have easily chosen to marry another man while she is in love with you.

Jamal: she was forced into it.

Thami: she had a choice... She had a choice to choose between love and family and she chose family. that clearly states that she never loved you.

Jamal: Thami.

Thami: I am so angry right now. angry that Tiana played you like a toy and yet you are here defending her actions.

Jamal: why are you angry its not you she hurt?

Thami: I am angry because I gave up my love for you to her and my chance to her only to find out that she never loved you. how should I feel? I thought she loved you that's why I gave up I saw her as my friend and decided to let you guys be happy now this? she easily choses another man whom she doesn't know or love over the love of her life?

Jamal:.....

Thami: tell me Jamal if you were in her shoes would you have chosen to marry another girl and leave her alone? huh?

Jamal looked down without saying anything.

Thami: Jamal Tiana is probably happy in her marriage I mean she is living the lavish. I am telling you she will never leave her "comfortable" life for you. so please don't even try or you will get hurt.

Jamal: ..... Thami..... I cant just let it be. at least I have to talk to her just one more time. just once.

Thami: about what? huh.... when will you get it in your thick skull that she never LOVED YOU!

Jamal: ENOUGH!!

Jamal looked at Thami who was looking at him with watery eyes.

Jamal: Isn't she supposed to be your best friend? why are you making her a bad person

Thami sighed looking away to blink her tears away.

Thami: just because I am her best friend doesn't mean I shouldn't state the facts.

Jamal: I appreciate your honesty but I would like to be alone now.

Thami looked at Jamal and looked away as she stood up from the couch took her jacket and walked to the door.

she opened the door then looked back at Jamal.

Thami: if me being angry that I gave up my love for you to someone who played with it because of selfishness makes me a fake best friend then so be it.

Jamal didn't look at her but looked fixed at the floor.

Thami walked out.

Jamal looked at the door and sighed leaning back.

he laid his head back facing the ceiling.

- AT THE POLICE STATION -

Zithu was wheeled into the visiting desk and placed there to wait for Nkululeko since he was visiting him.

Nkululeko was brought in and as he saw Zithu he smiled.

he sat down and looked at Zithu who had a straight face looking at Nkululeko.

Nkululeko: Zithu you finally came. ohh I see you took your mask off wow! you look like a gangster (laughs) anyway what took you so long?

Zithu: (looks down and then looks at him) are you still going to pretend?

Nkululeko: what? Zithu don't tell me you also think I am guilty?

Zithu:.....

Nkululeko: come on Zithu you know me. I am your brother Nkululeko I would never do such a thing. you know me Zithu.

Zithu: I thought I knew you Nkululeko but apparently I was lying to myself.

Nkululeko: what? what are you saying Zithu?

Zithu: The Nkululeko I knew and loved so much would have not planned to frame me with a fraud case I didn't commit or hide the fact that he knows who caused my accident and drove off.

Nkululeko looked at him with wide eyes shocked at what he was hearing right now. more like shocked that he was caught.

Nkululeko: Zithu.....

Zithu: when I heard the news

### **Sponsored**

I thought grandpa was not correct but then I asked myself why would grandpa lie? then I hear that you even tried making a pass at my wife. really??

Nkululeko:.....

Zithu: the case of the forged signature was it your doing as well?

Nkululeko: ..... Zithu....

Zithu: it was wasn't it? and here I was thinking you were working very hard to help me get to the bottom of this yet you were there laughing behind my back for being stupid and a fool. was is nice? was it?

Nkululeko: Zithu let me explain.

Zithu: I didn't come here to hear you explain. I want to know if its true or not.

Nkululeko: ..... well..... Zithu listen.

Zithu: True or false??

Nkululeko:.... (looks at Zithu)... I am sorry Zithu..

Zithu: so its true? (swallows and takes a deep breath.) I will ask you one question. actually 2. 2 questions. one why? and two who was responsible for my accident?

Nkululeko: .....

Nkululeko didn't say anything he just looked down at the table.

Zithu: you wont answer my questions?

Nkululeko still didn't answer he kept his face fixed on the table.

Zithu: fine.

Zithu called David and he instructed him to wheel him out. as he reached the door Nkululeko called him.

Nkululeko: Zithu!!

He turned around.

Nkululeko: I was jealous okay. Grandpa loved your father all the time and that resulted in him loving you more than any of us. I tried and worked hard everyday to make sure that I please him I sacrificed a lot for the company but he never not once gave me attention. I had to do something to show him I was capable. I was desperate to win him over to like me. do you blame me?

Zithu looked at him as he broke down Zithu didn't say anything for few seconds.

Zithu: do you know why grandpa managed to know what you are planning?

Nkululeko: .....

Zithu: he was always secretly watching you. all the hard work all the sacrifices you speak of he knew all about them. That was the reason why he had chosen that we would both take care of the company. he agreed to have you take 60% of his shares and I take 40 % of his shares because he knew that you were driven and a good successor. but congratulations now you lost all of that because of greed and malicious.

Nkululeko:.....

Zithu: but you only answered one question what about the other one?

Nkululeko: .....

Zithu saw that Nkululeko didn't want to talk so he tapped David and David wheeled him out.



Nkululeko hit the table and screamed. he realized that he had really lost everything.

- LATER -

- AT THE MAIN HOUSE -

Tiana was tossing and turning because of stomach gramps.

she thought it was her Periods starting again but it wasn't she kept checking and checking but these pains were straight up stomach pains.

She had taken some of Zithu's painkillers but it wasn't making any difference.

Zithu wheeled himself in the room finding Tiana still curled up on the bed.

he wheeled himself towards the bed and slightly woke Tiana up but she wasn't sleeping she was just trying to ignore the pain and sleep but she couldn't.

Zithu: Mami? are you better?

Tiana shook her head

Zithu: do you want some food?

Tiana shook her head.

Zithu: but you skipped breakfast and lunch. you must be hungry.

Tiana: no thank you.

Zithu: please Mami you can have whatever you want. anything.

Tiana: well.... whenever used to have stomach cramps my grandmother would make me porridge then add vinegar in it for me to eat.

Zithu: ok. I pray Miss Moisa or any of the helpers know how to make porridge.

Tiana: mhm.

she turned again looking away.

Zithu: ok let me get Josh to get one helper who can make porridge start on it.

Tiana: mhm... and I think I will be even more better when you have it with me.

Zithu: are you actually sick or you just plotting against me?

Tiana: if I wasn't I would be asking you about your visit at the police station.

Zithu: right. and you wouldn't say no to food its impossible.

Tiana: its good that a baboon like you understands me.

Zithu: ohhh little piggy don't get too excited have you forgotten who is sick? don't let me get ideas.

Tiana: ohhh Mr Handsome I wasn't calling you Baboon I meant someone else have mercy.

Zithu: (smiles) sneaky manipulator.

Tiana laughed through her pains.

## CHAPTER 32

- AT THE MAIN HOUSE -

Doc: nothing big nothing threatening but a minor issue.  
Mrs Khoza I would suggest that you slow your  
metabolism and give your body time to digest the food as  
well.

Tiana: ohhh Thank you Doc.

Doc smiled

Zithu: I am not surprised my wife here eats non stop.

Tiana: Zithu don't start with me.

Zithu: hini? I was just stating facts.

Tiana: mxm... Thank you Doc the pills you gave me even  
helped the pain settle down.

Doc: (smiles) ok then I better get going. but before  
I leave I have something to discuss with you Mr Khoza.

Zithu: me?

Doc: mhm I know we still have sessions together so  
I have assigned another doctor to help you since I will  
be transferred to another hospital soon.

Zithu: yah you once mentioned it to me.

Doc: oh yes. well I am glad I did because after this you  
will be meeting my substitute.

Zithu: does he know who he will be dealing with?

Doc: she.

Zithu: She?

Tiana: She?

Doc: I promise she isn't the type of woman you think  
she is. love is not something she entertains so rest  
assured Mrs Khoza your husband wont be going  
anywhere.

Tiana: oh no Doc I wasn't worried about that. and anyway it would be a good thing if a woman seduced him I mean I would be a free woman.

Zithu: free woman my behind. lose that idea woman.

Tiana and Doc laughed.

Tiana: jealousy hubby.

Zithu: I am not jealous pshhh imagine.

Tiana walked to him and kissed his cheek then walked out.

Tiana: ok jelly jelly.

she opened the door and walked out.

- AT THE POLICE STATION -

Mom: did you tell him?

Nkululeko: I couldn't.

Mom: good keep it that way.

Nkululeko: keep it what way mama? I am about to lose everything everything because of you.

Mom: me?

Nkululeko: yes you mama. you.

The mother looked at him in his eyes and clenched his teeth.

Mom: I held you for 9 months

**Sponsored**

gave life to your ass and made you this grown ass man you are today. I made you Nkululeko.

Nkululeko: true you made me like this. you made me a liar a evil manipulator like yourself.

Mom: how dare you speak to me like that?

Nkululeko: its true mama ever since dad passed away you always wanted me to go after the company no matter what? you used my hunger for this company to benefit yourself.

Mom: (sigh)

Nkululeko got up and walked himself to the guards and they took him back to his cell.

- SATURDAY AFTERNOON -

Tiana walked in the Café and looked around she saw Jamal sitting at a table near the window.

Tiana walked to him

Tiana: hi.

Jamal: hi I didn't think you would come.

Tiana: sorry I am late I had to do something before coming here.

Jamal: I understand. Coffee?

Tiana: no thank you. I will not be here for long.

Jamal: (nods) huh... how...how are you?

Tiana: I am fine. and you?

Jamal: I am doing okay. slowly.

Tiana: listen Jamal... I know...

Jamal: I know.. I know you are married. trust me I am not here to tell you to leave your marriage for me.

Tiana:.....

Jamal: I want to ask you something. something that I have been meaning to ask.

Tiana: mhm... you can ask.

Jamal: ..... did... did you.... love me?

Tiana looked at Jamal with nothing to say.

Jamal: I am not saying this to put doubt in your head. I just need to know. if you loved me or not?

Tiana: Jamal...

Jamal: (chuckles) what am I saying.... I am sorry. you don't have to answer that. lets leave it.

Tiana: .....

Jamal: .....

Jamal looked down to his coffee as Tiana looked away blinking her tears away.

Jamal: I am glad you are happy (he said not looking at Tiana) ..... as long as you are happy I am also happy.

Tiana still kept quiet trying not to cry as she felt guilty.

Jamal: as long as he is treating you well and that you are happy then its okay.

Tiana sighed in sadness.

Tiana got a text from Zithu

"I am hungry are you almost done? the meeting is starting to be a date now"

Tiana put the phone away and looked at Jamal.

Tiana: Jamal... I know I have hurt you very much. I know what I did was not what I was supposed to do. I am sorry I played with your heart I am sorry I wasted your time. I understand if you are angry with me. I would also be if I was in your shoes.

Jamal:.....

Tiana: there is nothing I can say or do to make you feel any less angry or sad. so I wont sit here and try to comfort you because I know I cant. my presence here is actually doing more damage then good. so Jamal please live please be happy please move on please find your heart again please.

Jamal: do you love him?

Tiana: ..... we were arranged to marry we had to learn to love each other.

Jamal: so you don't love him? its all forced love?

Tiana looked at him and her phone rang it was Zithu.

she looked at it and Jamal also looked at it and immediately thought that it could be him.

Jamal: is it him?

Tiana: mhm.. I have to go.

Jamal: does he know that you are here?

Tiana: ..... yes.

Jamal: with me?

Tiana: .... he is outside as we speak waiting in the car. I am sorry Jamal. I really am. please take care of yourself.

Tiana stood up and pushed her chair in.

Tiana: goodbye Jamal.

Jamal didn't say anything he just watched Tiana walk out.

Tiana got out and sighed looking down blinking the tears away so that Zithu wouldn't see them.

she then walked to the car and got in.

Zithu: done with your date?

Tiana: I am tired please let me be.

Zithu: mhm..

## CHAPTER 33

- 4 MONTHS LATER -

- NARRATOR -

In these passed Months things happend.

Here is what happened.

Zithu has made some progress. With The new Doc helping he has managed to move away from the wheelchair. yes he uses a walking stick now but he is doing very well.

He goes to morning walks 3 times a week just like he took wheelchair strolls 3 times a week.



as for Tiana well she is a mother to be. yes you read right about a month ago she had suspicions about being pregnant and their Doc Doc Ngcobo tested her and it turned out to be true. Zithu was so happy Grandpa doesn't know yet because he has travelled to Swaziland to fix things with Lwazi's Girls family (the unexpected pregnancy).

Nkululeko got arrested. No he wasn't FOUND guilty he just pleaded guilty and served his sentence. we don't know if it was his plan to get a lessor sentence or if he truly felt guilty and remorse.

The others? if its not their patience to destroy or just normal lives to live there is nothing much to update.

- TIANA -

I was in the kitchen making breakfast when Zithu walked in the kitchen.

Zithu: mhm smells great what are you making?

he said walking to me to give me a back hug.

I smiled and as I felt his body on my back.

he kissed my neck which made me raise my shoulder because it was tickling.

Tiana: Zithu stop I am cooking.

Zithu: mhm... didn't I tell you to stop overworking yourself?

Tiana: I am not overworking I am making my husband breakfast.

Zithu: but Miss Moisa can do that.

Tiana: about that don't you think its time you let your helpers go? I mean you don't need much help now you are on your feet and I am here to help with some other things.

Zithu: you think I will allow you to clean all this house alone?

Tiana: another thing I want us to talk about why buy a big house like this when we are just 2?

Zithu: what do you mean? (he asked as he took a seat in the kitchen table.)

Tiana: what I mean is....

I said as I took the plates out to dish out.

Tiana: why don't we get a smaller house like a comfortable house for us and our family? big houses are really not necessary well unless we get a bigger family.

Zithu: but a big house is more luxurious and has a lot to offer. I thought woman like luxurious lifestyles.

Tiana: luxury is nice and we can enjoy a luxury lifestyle while still living in a comfortable home. and you already said that I cant clean the whole house alone. so think about it.

I continued bringing the plate to him.

Zithu: okay I will think about it. just that to think about it.

Tiana: also bare in mind that this place is actually dangerous for a child. the stairs the open high place its not safe.

Zithu: mhm

**Sponsored**

now that you say it like that I will consider it. maybe you can do the house search.

Tiana: WE!! not me WE!

Zithu: mhm.

Tiana: I am not joking Zithu we need a safe place to raise a new born remember we will be both new parents so we need that.

Zithu: okay...

he said as he put a mouthful in his mouth.

Tiana: lets hope you are taking this serious.

Zithu: hay when have I ever not taking anything you say serious?

Tiana: oh you do?

Zithu: as far as I know yes.

Tiana: then tell me what we were discussing last night?

Zithu looked around trying to think then looked at his plate and focused on eating

Tiana: exactly!!

Zithu: what?? I just wanted to eat first.

Tiana: mhm... whatever.

I continued to eat.

The baby was not really unplanned for he/she was just early. we were already attending family planning at the clinic. so I wasn't really angry or shocked when I found out that I was pregnant because I saw it coming. I mean if you have unprotected intercourse then you should be ready for such results.

I haven't told my family about my pregnancy yet I am scared. I know there is nothing to be scared about but I am just scared. but soon soon I will tell them.

- LATER -

Zithu: Miss Moisa where is Tiana?

Miss Moisa: she is outside sir.

Zithu: ok thank you.

Miss Moisa: huh... sir?

Zithu: yes??

Miss Moisa: she asked to be alone.

Zithu: why?

Miss Moisa: she didn't say.

Zithu: ok. thank you.

He walked out and went to where Tiana was seated.

she was seated where Zithu used to sit when he felt down and needed some fresh air while watching the garden.

Zithu looked at her for a while without moving he then smiled and called out.

Zithu: Mami!!

he shouted while standing far from her.

Tiana looked back at him.

Tiana: I asked Miss Moisa to tell you that I needed some space.

Zithu: I know which is why I am standing right here.

Tiana: I meant to be alone.

Zithu: you are alone I am not next to you.

Tiana sighed and shook her head because she knew she wasn't going to win against Zithu.

Zithu: can I come closer?

Tiana: no.

Zithu: I heard a yes so I am coming.

Tiana chuckled looking down and shook her head.

Zithu knows exactly that when Tiana says she wants to be alone she actually doesn't mean it. the only time she means it is when she becomes aggressive and emphasises on it.

Zithu walked up to her and sat next to her.

Zithu: what are you doing alone with the garden?

Tiana: just thinking.

Zithu: about?

Tiana: stuff.

Zithu: do.. do you want to talk about it?

Tiana: not now. now I don't feel like talking I just want to breath fresh air and watch the garden.

Zithu: ohhhh I am hurt. are you saying that the house doesn't have fresh air? come on I take a bath everyday ok almost everyday when I am not lazy and I brush my teeth everyday 2 times in a day.

Tiana laughed and hot Zithu on the shoulder.

Tiana: mxm shut up Zithu.

Zithu smiled and offered Tiana his shoulders.

Zithu: here lay here and breath your fresh air. just don't fall asleep.

Tiana: I prefer sleeping here.

she lay her head on Zithu's lap.

Zithu smiled and played with her braided hair. this time it was braided in twists and long ones.

Zithu untied them and freed them while playing with them.

Zithu: these looks like snakes.

Tiana: Zithu don't scare me. you know I am even afraid of it's name.

Zithu: but you are not scared of the one you are laying your head next to.

Tiana: (laughs) I see you want to return to using a wheelchair.

Zithu: ok lets watch the garden.

they laughed.

## CHAPTER 34

- A WEEK LATER -
- NARRATOR -

Grandpa: I am glad we were able to sort out the issue yazi Lwazi almost dragged us to the mud with this family? if it wasn't for the good of our name I would have left Lwazi deal with this himself.

Zithu: (laughs) well I am glad you helped him out. he was starting to be like gum patched on me.

Grandpa: that laity always runs to you when he needs help.

Zithu: so annoying. I wonder what he thinks I will do? its not like I am a genie.

Grandpa: (laughs)

Zithu: anyway Grandpa since you are back Tiana has something to tell you.

Grandpa: me? Tiana? what does makoti want to tell me?

Zithu: let me call her to come tell you herself.

Grandpa: mhm... if its something negative then I don't want to hear it I have high blood pressure.

Zithu smiled and called Tiana.

Tiana was in the mood laying on the bed watching Anime.

she picked up the call.

Tiana: Zithu?

Zithu: Mami Grandpa would like to see you.

Tiana: oh ok I am on my way.  
Zithu: ok!

Tiana hung up and got off the bed wearing her slippers and heading down to the living room.

after a while she walked in the living room and smiled as she saw grandpa Grandpa also smiled and became cheerful when he saw Tiana.

Grandpa: makoti you get very beautiful every minute.

Tiana: thank you grandpa.

Zithu: don't brush her grandpa she might get wings too early.

Tiana looked at Zithu and Zithu looked away pretending like he didn't just say that.

Grandpa: hai suka leave this jealous one he is only jealous because I never tell him that he is handsome.

Zithu: I never even noticed that was the case. but why vele?

Grandpa: easy you are not handsome you never were you should be grateful to have such a beautiful wife next to you.

Zithu: now I see that I am the only one with the sharpest eye everyone is ..... beauty blind.

Grandpa: (laughs) or maybe you are the one who is beauty blind. I mean the majority is saying the same thing. right makoti.

Tiana: 100% Grandpa. I was about to say the same thing.

Zithu: (sigh) I think this is the time I will need Lwazi.



Tiana: trust me he wont side with you.

Grandpa: aw shame Makoti leave him he is about to cry.

Zithu looked at his grandpa and smiled while nodding. something like he was saying "fine I will get you" type of nod.

Grandpa: anyway Zithu said you had something to say with makoti hurry.

Zithu: you should be asking your favourite makoti I am not in the mood anymore.

Grandpa: hao pepesi.

Zithu widened his eyes and looked at Grandpa.

Zithu: grandpa how can you betray me.

Grandpa: what? what did I do?

Tiana: (smiles) Pepesi???

Grandpa: yes that's the name his grand mom used to call him when he was young.

Tiana: sounds like a girl name.

Grandpa: it was. his grand mom's sister used to be called pepesi by their granny so since Zithu looked and acted more like his grand mom's sister grand mom called him pepesi. and that was his nickname ever since.

Zithu buried his face in his hands embarrassed.

Tiana: well Grandpa pepesi and I will be parents!!

Grandpa: huh... Parents? wait makoti are you pregnant?

Tiana: (nods) yes grandpa. you are going to get a great grandson/daughter. a little Pepesi.

Zithu took his walking stick and stood up.

Zithu: I need fresh air. Tiana grandpa

**Sponsored**

enjoy

they laughed as Zithu walked out shaking his head.

- 4 MONTHS LATER -

Tiana was looking at herself in the mirror. she had gained so much weight because of pregnancy her nose was very fat.

Zithu walked in and back hugged her.

every since Zithu accepted his scar and blind eye he became open and managed to look at himself in the mirror. so now he was okay with looking himself in the mirror without having to be disgusted by his own face.

Zithu: what is my baby doing half naked in front of a mirror.

Tiana: nothing just watching myself blow up.

Zithu: (laughs) you are indeed blowing up. but that's a good thing right? its healthy.

Tiana: mhm..

Zithu could see that there was more to what was said so he turned her around and made her face him.

Zithu: Mami you are beautiful regardless. you blowing up like this means health. but your beauty just keeps going. look at that nose. so strong and healthy.

Tiana: (smiles) did you have to choose the nose out of everything?

Zithu: its the only one that stands out.

Tiana hit Zithu as Zithu laughed and Tiana smiled.

Zithu: Thank you for making me a father you have blessed me abundantly given me the opportunity of a lifetime. Thank you.

Tiana smiled.

Zithu leaned in and kissed Tiana on the lips and Tiana responded.

after a while Zithu pulled out and looked at her.

Zithu: you are going to be a very good mother.

Tiana: you think?

Zithu: yes I know.

Zithu's phone rang. he reached for it from his pocket and put it on his ear.

Zithu: Amanda!

Amanda: hi Zithu how are you?

Zithu: I am great and you?

Amanda: motherhood is killing me what about Tiana? is pregnancy holding her well?

Zithu: you can ask her yourself.

Zithu put her on loudspeaker.

Zithu: she is listening.

Amanda: Tiana? how are you? how is the little one keeping you?

Tiana: ohh hi Amanda well the pregnancy has no mercy I am always tired.

Amanda: yah its very tough I hope Zithu is taking care of you. those leg massages belly massages and all you need them.

Zithu: you should be telling her to let me do them. she always refuses me to do them.

Amanda: ohh you are missing out sis. they are so heavenly. grandpa hired a maternity nurse to take care of me at least you have Zithu. its always fun to do it as a couple.

Tiana: mhm...

she said as she stretched her neck.

Amanda: so when will you guys tell us the gender?

Zithu: I asked the doctor not to tell us. she will prepare a powder ball that will reveal if its blue for boys or pink for girls.

Amanda: ohhh I have seen those videos on Facebook I also wish I did that.

Zithu: its fun.

Amanda: so when will that be?

Zithu: when she is about 7/8 months

Amanda: ohh nice. well don't forget to let me know when it happens.

Zithu: mhm. we will. grandpa already said it would be a boy.

Amanda: well I am voting for a girl. boys are high maintenance.

Zithu: (laughs)

Tiana: true. I am with you on that one Amanda.

Zithu: ok Amanda let me help my wife.

Amanda: ok love birds.

Zithu: greet little Valentino.

Amanda: I will. (smiles)

Tiana: before you hang up Amanda did you think about what to do regarding the father?

Amanda: I called him when I gave birth to ask him to name the child. he gave me mixed emotions. he was emotional but angry as well. he also said it could be someone's else's child. but he named him and that's all that I needed. I didn't want to rob him that moment.

Tiana: ohhhh are you fine?

Amanda: yah. he has been calling saying we should meet he wants to meet Valentino. but I am not ready yet.

Tiana: if you need anything just know we are a call away.

Amanda: I know. thank you.

Tiana: take care.

Amanda: ok bye. Zithu take care of that princess.

Zithu: she's a queen.

Amanda: oops.

they laughed and Amanda hung up.

Zithu kissed Tiana again.

## CHAPTER 35

- A MONTH LATER -

- AT THE MAIN HOUSE -  
- NARRATOR -

Tiana was seated on the chair wrapped up in the mommy to be crown and a band around her shoulder down to her waist. she was blowing up.

she had on her newly bought pink oversized hoodie but really big it was almost like it was bought for someone really big but it was only because of the belly. she had on a tights and some nice slippers.

Zithu had done a baby shower for Zithu inviting all her family and his own family. everyone was happy for them well maybe almost all of them.

everyone was enjoying and having fun.

Slindile and Jay went to Tiana.

Slindile: my goodness you look like a buffalo.

Jay: I think an elephant is the word you are looking for. I mean look at her nose.

Tiana laughed listening to them.

Tiana: hai nina.

Slindile: no mara serious. you look a mess. pregnancy ruined your image. girl after giving birth you better gym you better eat healthy and burn those pregnancy fats.

Tiana: if you agree to train me I might consider.

Jay: hai phela Mr Zithu can work now meaning if you don't glow it up he may see other glows out there.

Tiana: that's when he will lose his manhood.

Jay blocked his package as if blocking from being hit and pretends that he was hit.

Slindile: ouuuuuuuuuuu even jay here felt the pain in advance

Jay: if the imagination is so strong imagine real life.

they laughed.

Slindile: well wena girl. he wont go anywhere Mr Khoza looks like the type to choose family over everything so don't worry he is yours forever.

Tiana: I know.

Jay: (sigh) I am glad this arranged marriage worked out for you.

Tiana smiled and as she looked up she saw Thami standing at the gate.

Tiana: yah... but it came with hurting a lot of people.  
(she said that still looking at the Thami)

Slindile: you mean Jamal? yah he was really hurt but handsome guys like him move on quickly I am sure he even forgot about you by now.

Tiana: yah I wish that's how it went because if not I don't know how I would think about myself.

Jay: hai forget about Jamal. it was just a fling and it ended. if it was meant to be This marriage wouldn't have worked out.it would have been a disaster then I would say that maybe Jamal was the one. but by how things

turned out Mr Khoza is the one Jamal was just a "keep a company".

Slindile: Jay??

Jay: hini? its true.

Tiana had her eyes at Thami until Thami decided to leave. Tiana didn't have the strength to chase after her so she let her be and just looked away. somehow she still felt guilty she felt like she wronged Jamal and knowing that Thami loved Jamal but still let them date made her even more guilty.

---

### FLASHBACK

---

Tiana: I am sorry I didn't know he was the crush you kept talking about.

Thami: its ok its not your fault. I didn't say his name and didn't show you a picture its not like you were able to smell that he was the one I was talking about.

Tiana: (smiles) are you really ok? I mean I can reject him.

Thami: no don't reject him because of me I would fee guilty. if you love him then give him a chance

### **Sponsored**

then give him a chance you never know he could be your future husband.

Tiana: ..... Thami I never want to lose you as my friend if you are not okay with it please let me know.

Thami: Tiana yes I love Jamal he is my crush. but I am happy that he is with you and not someone who will make him sad.



Tiana:.....

Thami: he looks like he really loves you and if he is playing I will be the first one to kick his teeth out. and if you play him I will kick your teeth out.

Tiana: (laughs) well I know that my teeth are safe since I know I love him for real.

Thami: good. keep it healthy.

Tiana: I promise to take care of Jamal.

Thami: I will remember this.

Tiana: (laughs)

---

END OF FLASHBACK

---

Tiana wiped her tears as they escaped from her eyes.

Slindile: ncoooow she is crying.

Jay: ncoooow.

Zithu stepped in the middle getting everyone's attention.

Zithu: halo everyone it is time time to see if we have blue or pink. Mami come here please. Siblings help her.

Jay: my name is Jay.

Zithu: I didn't ask.

Jay: haibo..... I.....

Tiana held him and smiled.

Tiana: he wont give up easily trust me. I know.'

Jay rolled his eyes and helped Tiana to walk where Zithu was.

Doc: ok so I prepared this ball here. what will happen is Mrs Khoza will throw the ball at Mr Khoza and Mr Khoza will hit the ball with this stick The ball will burst and powder reveal the gender.

they smiled looking at each other.

they did as instructed.

Tiana smiled and held the ball.

Tiana: I cant I just open it up?

Zithu: Mami just pass the ball.

Tiana: uyabora yazi.

Zithu: come Mami come.

Tiana threw the ball and Zithu hit it with the stick it came out a pink powder Tiana screamed in happiness Zithu went to hug her.

even though Zithu wished for it to be a boy he was still happy that it was a girl.

happy tears filled his eyes.

Tiana was also happy.

- LATER -

Tiana and Zithu were in bed. Zithu was giving her a belly massage.

Tiana: mhm... its like I can pop her up already I cant.

Zithu: I wish I could share your pain I am sorry love.

Tiana: as long you treat me to this all the time I will still hold on.

Zithu: mhm and I will always be here for you.

Tiana: I know...

she smiled and Zithu continued giving massages and also feet massages.

Tiana: mhm have you thought about a name yet?

Zithu: mhm not yet. I actually wanted my grandfather to name him.

Tiana: wow I also wanted to pick some brains from my grandmother.

Zithu: then we can do that.

Tiana: ok I will call her tomorrow.

Zithu: ok hope it will be beautiful names. even though I don't trust my grandpa with names.

Tiana: mhm pepesi.

Zithu: I will leave you.

Tiana laughed.

Tiana: ok ok.

## CHAPTER 36

Postpartum depression (PPD) is a complex mix of physical emotional and behavioural changes that happen in some women after giving birth. According to the DSM-5 a manual used to diagnose mental disorders PPD is a form of major depression that begins within 4 weeks

after delivery. The diagnosis of postpartum depression is based not only on the length of time between delivery and onset but on the severity of the depression.

- AT THE HOSPITAL -  
- IN THE WARD -  
- NARRATOR -

Tiana: AHHHHHHHHH!!!!

Nurse: yes yes just a little more my darling just a little more we are almost there.

Tiana was laying on the bed screaming as she was pushing for the child in her to come out.

she pushed and pushed while screaming and sweating. the nurse next to her held her strong making sure she was okay and breathing and doing it well.

- MEANWHILE -

Zithu was in the reception area pacing up and down wondering if Tiana was okay.

Lwazi walked in the hospital and found Zithu on the chair burying his head in his hands. he ran to him.

Lwazi: Zithu? what happened? why are you looking so down? didn't Sister in law get through.

Zithu: (sigh) Lwazi would you shut up. how can you say that?

Lwazi: you look like someone who just lost.

Zithu: ..... I am just stressed. (deep breath) and tired.

Lwazi: why don't you go rest I can wait here until they are done.

Zithu: no I will be okay. I cant wait to see my Queen and Princess.

Lwazi: (laughs) I was also like you not so long ago. (smiles) the happiness excitement joy peace its unexplainable. its like a new chapter. finally you have a full family.

Zithu: (laughs) I keep forgetting that you are a father now.

Lwazi: ouch! that hurts.

Zithu laughed.

Lwazi: grandpa is about to be very happy.

Zithu: meaning?

Lwazi: he has a new favourite.

Zithu: (sigh) you saying it because you think

## **Sponsored**

I am grandpa's favourite?

Lwazi: isn't it how it is?

Zithu: (laughs) let me tell you a secret. Grandpa has no secret he only loves me because I never say no. but he admires and respects your courage because you know what you want. the only he always had with you is that you never stopped playing. look at the results now. a child with someone you don't love. this is what grandpa was trying to get you away from.

Lwazi: and I regret it but I don't regret my son.

Zithu: spoken like a true father.

they laughed.

- BACK IN THE WARD -

\* Baby crying \*

Nurse: (smiles as she held the child) congratulations ma'am its a girl.

Tiana breathed while looking at the nurse.

The nurse wrapped up the process.

after they brought the baby for Tiana to see her before she was taken to be bathed.

Tiana held her with her half closed eyes and spotted a birthmark on her shoulder almost the same one she heard but hers was on the side of her stomach.

Tiana then smiled and then nodded for the nurse to take her.

she laid her head and fell into a deep sleep.

- BACK IN THE RECEPTIONIST -

The doctor came towards Zithu and Zithu stood up heading to the doctor.

Zithu: Doc? is she okay? is Tiana okay? is my daughter okay?

Doc: (smiles) congratulations Mr Khoza your wife delivered a healthy baby.

Zithu: (relieve and happiness) are you serious doctor really?

Doc: yes sir congratulations.

Zithu smiled.

- LATER -

Zithu: wow she is so beautiful.

Tiana: mhm...

Zithu looked at Tiana who was facing the ceiling.

Zithu: are you okay?

Tiana looked at Zithu and faked a smile.

Tiana: mhm.

Zithu: that's all you have been saying since I came here. are you sure you are fine?

Tiana: (sigh) yes Zithu I am fine.

Zithu: Mami you know you can talk to me.

Tiana: .....

baby start rambling and Zithu hushed her down before she cried.

Zithu: I think she is hungry.

Zithu stood up attempting to hand the child to Tiana.

Tiana looked away and turned her body reached for the bottle that was next to the bed.

Zithu: hao Tiana aren't you going to take the child and feed him?

Tiana: here is the milk the nurse helped me prepare. you can feed her this.

Zithu: what? you want to bottle feed her? should she be breastfed?

Tiana: ..... I don't think I have milk in my breasts.

Zithu: Mami

Tiana: I am also tired.

Zithu looked at her wondering what was wrong with her.

Tiana just sighed and looked away.

she also didn't understand she felt confused all over the place and just didn't know how she felt.

## CHAPTER 37

- NEXT DAY -

- AT THE HOSPITAL -

Zithu was in the room with Tiana The child was peacefully sleeping next to her. Tiana had to stay for a few days because something showed up while she was delivering and the nurse wants to make sure she is okay and healthy before she leaves the hospital.

she might stay a week (max) but 2/3 days if the results come quicker.



Tiana: you look tired don't you want to go rest?

Zithu: and leave you here alone? you need someone who will help you with the child. so that you can rest.

Tiana: I told you the nurses are good. they help me a lot.

Zithu: and I also want to help. you are my wife and she is my daughter I want to be a good father that takes care of his family.

Tiana: you already do that. no need to kill your health. we need a healthy King to take care of his family.

Zithu: and I am healthy.

Tiana: (smiles) as long as it doesn't affect your leg.

Zithu: it wont.

Tiana smiled and looked away as her smile fades away.

Zithu: anything wrong?

Tiana: nothing.

Zithu: Mami?

Tiana looked at Zithu....

Tiana: ..... (deep breath) I am scared I am afraid I am confused.

Zithu: what do you mean? what are you talking about?

Tiana: Zithu? will I ever be a good mother to our little angel?

Zithu: of cause you will of cause.

Zithu held her hand and leaned closer to her.

Zithu: you will be a great mother to her I know it.

Tiana: (shook head) but.... I... (wants to cry)..... I ..... don't feel close to her... I don't feel the bond Zithu. its like..... she is not my child...

Zithu looked at her and wiped her tears as they rushed down her cheeks.

Zithu: don't say that Tiana you just gave birth you are tired. you just need time to relax and everything will be okay.

Tiana: (shook head)

Zithu: you will be fine trust me.. husshhhhh my love don't cry... shhhhh

he brought her close to his chest and brushed her head as she cried.

Zithu kissed her forehead and hugged her tighter.

- LATER -

\*knocking\*

Zithu went to open the door and the whole family was there Grandpa Tiana's father and Tiana's grandmother Lwazi Slindile and Jay.

Tiana was surprised to see everyone here especially her grandmother.

Tiana: Grandmother??? (starts breaking down)

Grand mom: ohhhh look at this stupid cry baby.

Mr Kekana: she must have missed you a lot.

Grand mom went to Tiana and Tiana hugged Grand mom's waist and Grand mom brushed her hands through Tiana's cornrows.

Grand mom: I am here my baby I am here. don't cry now.

Grandpa: ohhhhh you punk your wife is happy to see her grand mom you don't even look happy seeing me.

Zithu: how? when all I see is you. even in my dreams.

Grandpa: at least you dream about me you must love me a lot.

Zithu: I do dream about you. and all the dreams with you inside are nightmares.

Grandpa laughed as he aimed his stick at him and the others also laughed.

Lwazi: why is old grandpa and young grandpa fighting.

Zithu: who is young grandpa?

Grandpa: who is old?

Lwazi: well you both using sticks to walk now. that makes it even to look alike. Zithu is like the younger version of grandpa.

Grandpa: hai I was very handsome as a young man Zithu is not even half the handsome I was.

Lwazi: you are right grandpa.

Grandpa: of cause I am.

Lwazi: yah you always taught me to always let people believe what they believe even when you know its not true it will teach them a good lesson.

the others laughed and Grandpa almost got Lwazi with his stick but he was quick to escape.

Tiana was now laying her head on her grandmother's shoulders as Grand mom was now sitting on a chair next to her.

Mr Kekana: grandkids always make grandparents have grey hair.

Grandfather: true. I already have 3 that are on my head the other 3 at least got a life.

Mr Kekana: well I am about to experience it.

Grandfather: ohh

### **Sponsored**

I am about to experience it.

Grandfather: ohh look at her kicking and playing with her hands.

yah she was woken up by the playful family laughing and making noise Zithu didn't say anything since he was going to let them see her.

Grandfather: Grandson bring her here let me bless her.

Zithu picked up the young princess then stood up and handed her to Grandfather.

Grandfather took her and held her carefully.

Grandfather: what is her name?

Zithu: we haven't named her grandfather. Tiana and I decided that Grandpa and Tiana's grand mom should name her.

Grand mom: me? (surprised)

Tiana looked at grand mom

Grand mom: yes grand mom. and dad where is mom?  
why isn't she here?

Mr Kekana: she had something urgent to do but she will  
definitely come see you and the child.

Tiana: oh. (smiles)

Grandfather: well in that case then I will call her.....  
Sphehlehle

Slindile: little Sihle.

Jay: no little Sphe.

the 2 started silently quarrelling about the half name.

Zithu smiled looking at Tiana who was nodding in  
agreement.

Grandfather: Sphehlehle she will be a gift to many and  
also to this world.

After a moment with Sphe and Sphe kicking and sucking  
her hands Grandfather handed her to grand mom.

Grand mom: well I am Sotho so I will call her Botho.

they smiled again in agreement

Grand mom: she will unite the separated and show  
humanity to all. she will be an example of kindness and  
purity. indeed a gift to this world.

after a moment Tiana held her and looked at her.

Sphe kept on minding her business and playing Tiana just looked at her with not much feeling in her.

she looked aside and faked a smile.

Tiana: Sphehile Botho Khoza I like it.

Zithu: me too.

Tiana then handed the child to Zithu.

not everyone could hold the child. only Grandfather Grandmother Tiana and Zithu. the rest just looked at her and admired her cuteness.

Grandpa: I have been lucky these days. 3 new-borns I blessed.

Mr Kekana: 3?

Grandpa: yah Lwazi's child Amanda's child and now Zithu's child. I feel so blessed. even though Amanda's child has nothing to do with me but she has been keeping me entertained at home.

Zithu: about Amanda grandpa did she decide what to do?

Grandpa: I hope she has because she cant keep the child away from the father forever so I called her parents and spoke to them. they were furious angry but I managed to get through them. Amanda will be meeting them this weekend to settle the dust

Zithu: so there was an issue with the parents?

Grandpa: they warned her about this man but she didn't listen so they let her go and kind of disowned her because she refused an arranged marriage.

Zithu: ohhh

Grandpa: but lets focus on this celebration. we have to have one big new-born welcome party.

Zithu: Grandpa woahw!

they laughed.

- LATER AT NIGHT -

Tiana was sleeping peaceful with the baby in her small bed and Zithu sleeping on the chair.

Mrs Kekana walked in and stood at the door. no one knew she was here how she entered only she knew.

she stood at the door looking at the child and Tiana.

she sighed and looked down heading out.

- DURING THE NIGHT -

Zithu was woken up by his phone ringing.

Zithu: hallo?

Nkululeko: Zithu I need to speak to you.

Zithu: are you ready to tell me what I want to hear?

Nkululeko: and more.

he kept quiet.

## CHAPTER 38

- IN PRISON -
- NARRATOR -

Nkululeko was brought in the visiting hall. he saw Zithu and and walked to where he was seated.

Zithu looked at him as he sat down.

Nkululeko: congratulations. I hope sister in law delivered healthy.

Zithu: is that why you called me here?

Nkululeko: I just wanted to congratulate you. cant I even do that?

Zithu looked down then looked at Nkululeko.

Zithu: Thank you for congratulating me I cant really say I am pleased but thank you.

Nkululeko smiled and nodded.

Nkululeko: I cant believe I am the one left behind. Lwazi is a father and now you are a father. I am literally the only grandson who hasn't blessed grandpa with a great grand child. but I guess it doesn't matter right? he wont even notice it right?

Zithu: you whining about being the "unnoticed" grandson in the family wont cut it. you chose to believe what you wanted to believe so save the speech for someone else.



Nkululeko looked at Zithu and chuckled as he leaned back.

Zithu: will you actually tell me what I am doing here or not?

Nkululeko: before I say anything can I apologize in advance?

Zithu: for what?

Nkululeko: for the pain trauma sadness and what was taken from you which is love.

Zithu: huh?

Nkululeko: you..... you will probably hate me after knowing this my family may also be thrown on the street and the surname of the Khoza might be taken from us after knowing this but its ok. I am ready for it. I have learned my lesson. I have learned that blood doesn't make you related but Loyalty does. that's why sometimes water becomes thicker then blood.

Zithu looked at him trying to make out what he was saying.

Nkululeko: you said you wanted to know who was behind the car accident right?

Zithu leaned in indicating that he is listening.

Nkululeko: Ms Khoza.

Zithu: Ms Khoza?

Nkululeko: yes. your aunt. my mother.

Zithu looked at Nkululeko shocked.

- AT THE HOSPITAL -

Tiana was in her room playing games on her phone while her baby played in her little bed.

as she was playing someone knocked on the door.

Tiana: come in!!!!

the door opened and Tiana just looked at her phone playing.

the person came closer and Tiana raised her eyes to see who it was and when she did she immediately stopped playing and tears started forming in her eyes.

Tiana: Thami!!

Thami looked at her. she looked as if she had been crying. her face was wet and her eyes were red and swollen. she looked a mess and dirty like she was on mud.

Thami: Tiana!!!

she said as more tears came out of her tears.

Tiana: I... I.. am sorry... I am sorry!!

Tiana started to breakdown.

Thami shook her head as she walked closer to Tiana.

Thami: I am sorry I am sorry I turned evil and became selfish. you got married got pregnant and I never supported you all I did was hate you for what you did....

Tiana: Thami....

Thami: Love is supposed to be a wonderful thing.... why did I let it turn me into a monster? why? (continues crying)

Tiana: it didn't. you are still amazing.

Thami: I am feeling sleepy can I sleep here for a while.

Tiana nodded and moved a little for her to sleep.

Thami pulled a chair and sat on a chair near the bed.

Tiana: don't.... don't you want to see your little princess? remember we wished that our kids could be best friends?

Thami: I am really tired right now maybe when I wake up I will smile and be joyful.

Tiana: (smiles) ok.

Thami laid on the bed while sitting on the chair and Tiana held her messy untidy hair and rubbed it.

she then laid back and looked at Thami until she also fell asleep.

- BACK IN PRISON -

Zithu: what?

Nkululeko: she hired people to do it. I found out later and she told me to keep quiet. she manipulated me cornered me

**Sponsored**

I had no choice. she was my mother.

Zithu: so just because she is your mother she can do anything and you will stand by her right?

Nkululeko: ..... she was the only one that stood by me. everyone was focused on their lives. grandpa didn't notice me you all were happy.

Zithu: blame it on the rejection. huh?

Nkululeko: she told me that if you could be unable to work then grandpa would have no choice but to trust me because Lwazi is just a mess.

Zithu: and indeed he did.

Nkululeko: ..... I couldn't stop the process but I made her promise never to touch you again.

Zithu: right and that's supposed to make me feel better?

he looked down.

Zithu: your mother deserves to be here with you. I cant be comfortable living while that woman is free. I have a child to look out for. I hope you understand.

Nkululeko: that's why I told you.

Zithu: you could have said this in the beginning? why after so long?

Nkululeko: as I said. sometimes water is thicker then blood.

Zithu looked at him.

Nkululeko stood up.

Nkululeko: I have something else to tell you. your father didn't die out of allergies or anything like that. he was murdered.

Zithu: what!!

Zithu was in attar shock.

Nkululeko: my mom doesn't know that I know that she got my dad to kill your father. I found out when they were arguing in the study few days after the incident.

---

FLASHBACK

---

- IN THE STUDY AT NKULULEKO'S DAD'S HOUSE (YEARS AGO) -

Nkululeko was heading to his father's study to hand him a delivery that just arrived. but as he heard his parents talking he listened in.

Mom: listen listen to me. you had to do it. you had to.

Dad: but.... but.... (breaking down)

Mom: man up Vuyo. this is not the time to be crying like a child. you did this so that you can get the top chair. and I am here to help you get there. as your wife I have to support you. I am the neck and you are the neck. ok...

Dad:.....

Mom: good. no one will know that Zimele was murdered they will think he passed out or something nothing will trace back to us. so reax and pretend you just lost a dear brother that you loved.

Dad:.....

Mom: good. mourn for him cry if you have to just don't do anything that will make you suspicious. the throne is near my love soon we will rein and lead the bull.

Nkululeko heard footsteps and ran away to the living room to make it seem like he wasn't just there listening.

he was shocked mixed emotions because he personally loved his uncle and was very sad that he left them and most of all he felt for Zithu but now that he knew that his parents were involved he didn't know where to run.

and to keep the love from his parents and not end up alone he kept quiet.

\_\_\_\_\_ END OF  
FLASHBACK \_\_\_\_\_

Nkululeko: my sentence might be increased because of all this. but who cares? I have accepted and I don't care anymore. (deep breath) damn I have been burdened by this now I feel hella light.

he smiled and walked to the guards.

Zithu couldn't stand look at him or anything. he was still as tears came out of his eyes. he still couldn't believe it. he didn't believe it.

he wasn't just broken but torn to pieces.

CONTINUATION OF 38

- OUTSIDE PRISON -
- NARRATOR -

Zithu walked to his car and Josh hurried to go open the door for him. he walked in and leaned back.

Josh got in the driver's seat and put on his seatbelt.

Josh: hospital sir?

Zithu: ..... please hold on for a sec I will tell you now.

Josh: are you ok sir?

Zithu: .... I am fine.... don't worry.

he took out his phone and dialled his grandfather's phone.

he answered.

Grandpa: Zithu!

Zithu:.....

Grandpa: Zithu? can you hear me?

Zithu: ..... grandpa?

Grandpa: Zithu? why do you sound so down? are you ok?

Zithu: .....

he couldn't gather the strength to say anything so he lowered his phone and hung up. he then dialled Tiana's phone but it kept on ringing she wasn't answering. he concluded that she was sleeping because that's the only time she doesn't hear the phone ring. she has been a deep sleeper from when she got 5/6 months pregnant.

he hung up again and looked down.

Josh: sir?

Zithu: take me... take me to Bergbron part. I need to breath I feel like I am running out of oxygen.

Josh: don't you need to go to the hospital sir? it could be a serious issue.

Zithu: no the park is what I need.

Josh nodded and drove to where Zithu wants to go.

Zithu's leg hasn't been strong enough for him to start driving yet. so he still needs a driver.

- AT THE HOSPITAL -

a nurse came in about over an hour later.

she saw Thami sleeping on the side and Tiana also asleep  
The baby was crying not heavily but she needed attention.

The nurse rushed to the child and attended to her as she gently woke Tiana up.

Tiana was so deep in sleep that she didn't hear the baby cry. but then the baby was not crying loud she was just "about to cry" if I may put it.

Nurse: ma'am!! Ma'am!!

Tiana slowly woke up and looked at the nurse.

Nurse: I think she is hungry. where is Mr Khoza?

Tiana: he went out. Thank you.



Tiana didn't want to breastfeed but Zithu managed to talk her into it and she ended up breastfeeding. but she doesn't plan on doing it for long because she doesn't want her to be a problem when she starts going to crèche.

the nurse hands the baby to her and she picks her up.

she also smiles looking at Thami. she saw a paper in Thami's hand. it was wrapped up into a little ball. she didn't pay much attention to it.

Nurse: should I wake ma'am up?

Tiana: yes please

### **Sponsored**

but Zithu managed to talk her into it and she ended up breastfeeding. but she doesn't plan on doing it for long because she doesn't want her to be a problem when she starts going to crèche.

the nurse hands the baby to her and she picks her up.

she also smiles looking at Thami. she saw a paper in Thami's hand. it was wrapped up into a little ball. she didn't pay much attention to it.

Nurse: should I wake ma'am up?

Tiana: yes please I bet she is hungry. I will call Zithu to get us something to eat.

she nodded as Zithu reached for her phone seeing 6 missed calls from Zithu.

Tiana: 6 missed calls?

Nurse: ma'am she isn't waking up.

Tiana: huh? she isn't waking up?

Tiana starts freaking out and that also affects the child as she starts crying.

The nurse checks the pulses and heart beat there was nothing she rushed out to call a doctor and other nurses Tiana couldn't stop screaming Thami's name and shaking her up to wake up.

This side the child was crying very painfully as if she could feel what the mother was going through.

Tiana: Thami!! Thami!! Thami you said you would see my princess when you woke up. Thami wake up. Thami!!!

the doctors rushed in attending to her. as they picked her up the paper in her hand dropped on the floor. Tiana put the child on the bed and wanted to rush to Thami but the nurse asked her to calm down.

- AT BERDBRON PARK -

Zithu was sitting at one of the bench at the park looking at the sky. his tears kept betraying him as he constantly wiped them.

he faced the other way and buried his face in his hands.

he couldn't hold back he couldn't stop himself he wanted to scream.

he broke down and started crying. but he cried in his hands.

his phone kept ringing and ringing but he didn't even attend to it.

## CHAPTER 39

- AT THE HOSPITAL -  
- NARRATOR -

Tiana was laying on the bed reading the paper that was in Thami's hand. she picked it up and opened it to find a letter.

it was directed to her.

---

---

Dear Tiana

I am sorry that I had to do this but I just couldn't take it. I am sorry I never supported you I am sorry I never stood by you as a friend. I should have done better its just that I was angry and just feel played. I did not only lose a friend but I lost a crush as well. but I guess its life. I couldn't handle the pain and suffering I had to go through everyday because of this so I decided to find peace and end the pain and suffering. call me selfish because I know you will. but at least now I will be in

peace well I hope. before I came here I drank a handful of pills. yah I overdosed. don't worry I am ok. overdose is better then living and breathing pain. don't blame yourself for my death it was bound to happen. we all live to die. my time just came earlier.

I love you. and I will look upon you all the time.

---

---

she read the letter over and over again.

she was weak and she didn't have tears anymore in her eyes. she was dry numb and just didn't know what to do with herself.

she was already informed that Thami didn't make it. she gave details to where Thami's family is so that they get informed.

She was so tired of crying so tired of being tired. she was also wondering if maybe death is the only way to feel free.

after so much that happened maybe just dying makes everything ok.

" I wont be a good mom to Sphe Zithu will be okay without me maybe I can finally smile" those were her thoughts.

someone knocked and Tiana just looked at the door to be met with Lwazi popping his head in holding some bought coffee and muffins. Tiana didn't say anything Lwazi came in.

Lwazi: sister in law. your husband asked me to come and check his 2 favourite people in the world.

Tiana didn't say anything.

Lwazi: not you too.

Tiana still kept her eyes on the paper Thami wrote.

Lwazi: what is going on with you 2? are you guys getting a divorce?

Tiana still didn't answer.

Lwazi peeked at the letter and read it while Tiana was still holding it.

Lwazi: wait what happened? who wrote this letter?

Tiana: Thami.....

Lwazi: she committed suicide? why? and who was she to you?

Tiana:..... best friend.

Lwazi:..... ohhh now I understand why you are like this. I cant say I understand how you feel but I can only imagine.

Tiana:..... she..... she was so young....

Lwazi put the coffee and muffins on the table and held her shoulders. She wasn't in the room the nurse was taking care of her. and since Tiana's results are coming out today she might get discharged later today or tomorrow morning.

Lwazi: I am sorry. I am truly sorry.

Tiana broke down again.

its like Lwazi saying "I am sorry" just brought back the feeling and she broke down again.

Lwazi held her tight in a hug and brushed her back to calm her down.

- MINUTES LATER -

Tiana was now calmed down. Lwazi had given her the cup of coffee and muffin but she only kept drinking the coffee but Lwazi let her be.

Tiana: when I found out that I was going to get married to Zithu I was already in a relationship with someone but my parents didn't know. I had to leave him. that guy was my friends crush

### **Sponsored**

but my parents didn't know. I had to leave him. that guy was my friends crush but she respected us. but I betrayed her and him by not fighting for our love I let him go easily and dropped him without considering his feelings. nor my friends feelings. I betrayed her trust.

she believed I would take care of her crush but I didn't instead I broke her.....

she looked down taking a deep breath.

Tiana: I should have fought for my love I should have refused. maybe just maybe Thami would still be around. happy. smiling.

Lwazi: but would you be happy? I mean if you would have fought then that means you wouldn't be married to Zithu and you wouldn't be having Sphe right now. would that have been okay?

Tiana: at least I would still have my best friend. she left without even saying goodbye. we didn't even clear things out.

Lwazi: she came here knowing she would take her last breath soon she came to you to apologize that means you did clear it out.

Tiana:.....

Lwazi: you were the last person she spoke to before she left it means she valued you and she would want you to be happy not sad. she even wrote on the letter that you shouldn't blame yourself. its not your fault.

Tiana:.....

Lwazi: life is a mission. we get new tasks and bosses to beat everyday. you win the tasks and bosses you go to the next level and know that tomorrow will be tougher then today but its worth it. because once you get to where God wants you to be you will be happy and free.

Tiana: (smiles) did the child's mother take you to church?

Lwazi: (laughs) no. its just something I was told when I was young. I just didn't take it serious back then so I played around.

Tiana; by grandpa?

Lwazi: no. by someone who has to hear those words right now.

Tiana: who?

Lwazi: your husband. I don't know what happened but he is like you.

Tiana: what do you mean like me?

Lwazi: he is a crying mess like you. he doesn't say anything.

Tiana: ..... really I wonder what happened in prison.

Lwazi: prison?

Tiana: yah he left here saying he is going to visit Nkululeko. maybe he found out who was involved in the accident he had. he said Nkululeko knows.

Lwazi: Sh\*\*!! I wonder who it is. it must be someone close since it really hurt him.

Tiana: mhm.

- LATER -

Detective: Mrs Khoza we are here regarding the death of Thami Ngema.

Tiana: yes detective how can I help.

Detective: is it fine if we can get your statement?

Tiana nodded. Lwazi was still by his side.

- IN THE CAR -

Zithu still in the car looking outside as it started getting dark.



his phone rang again after so many times and this time he answered.

Zithu: mhm.

Lwazi: Zithu..... thank goodness you answered your phone. I have been trying to reach you.

Zithu: ..... anything wrong?

Lwazi: you and Tiana need each other. Sphe is not doing good either with both her parents being cold.

Zithu: something happened?

Lwazi: well..... not really but your wife's emotions were triggered.

Zithu: what do you mean?

Lwazi: look at yourself. how you are right now. a mess. well Mrs Khoza is also like that.

Zithu: can you stop being Mulimisi and speak something I can understand.

Lwazi: her best friend committed suicide she died in her sleep just after she visited Tiana. she asked Tiana to sleep since she is tired and that was the end of her. she overdosed minutes before she walked into the ward so that she could have time to say goodbye. once the pills settled she started falling asleep. Tiana blames himself

Zithu: ..... (sigh) ok. I will be at the hospital after sometime.

Lwazi: mhm. and when you get here speak to your wife as well. I miss the brother that always tells me where to get off whenever I call. this sweet one doesn't make me comfortable.

Zithu: (chuckles) mhm.

Lwazi: ok. we love you mahn. just know that.

Zithu: mhm.

Lwazi hung up and Zithu looked ahead. Josh was still in the car waiting.

Zithu: Josh please take me home so I go freshen up then we go to the hospital.

Josh: yes sir.

Zithu listened to Tiana and bought a smaller house. its a 3 room house with a living room and a kitchen and bathroom. and also a nice garden outside but smaller.

it doesn't have stairs its just a fat house and very suitable for a beginner family. the helpers are still at the big house and Zithu let Lwazi stay there for a while until he gets his own place. Lwazi's baby mama and child are also staying with Lwazi.

## CHAPTER 40

- AT THE HOSPITAL -

- NARRATOR -

???: uphi?? uphi lombulayi??

a woman screamed walking in the hospital. the nurses stopped her.

???: hai leave me alone mahn. tell that murderer to come out here and face me. there is no way my Thami could commit suicide. she is a liar where is she.

Nurse: ma'am this is a hospital please calm down.

???: a hospital my foot. My daughter was murdered in this hospital and you couldn't save her. in this hospital? how is that even possible?

Nurse: ma'am please!!

???: Hai Mahn!!

Zithu walked in and found the commotion taking place.

he was about to pass them when he heard the woman say Tiana's name.

???: hai!! bring that Tiana out. let me deal with her.

Zithu turned to the woman and walked to her.

Zithu: sorry san'bonani I heard something about Tiana.

???: do you know her?

Zithu: yes.

???: good. I don't know if she is your sister or something but please tell that murderer to come out here and explain to us why she killed my daughter.

Zithu: Thami?

???: futhi uyamazi? right call her.

Zithu: ma'am your daughter committed suicide and there is even a letter to confirm that. so why are you here making false accusations?

???: haibo so you are working together?

Zithu: ma'am

**Sponsored**

so you are working together?

Zithu: ma'am if you continue making this allegations I will get you arrested.

???: (chuckles)and who are you?

Zithu I am Zithulele Khoza.

???: (laughs) you think money will make me scared you think you can wipe your sins with money? you have no shame.

Zithu: well keep making those allegations and you will see what money can do. instead of giving your daughter the peaceful goodbye you are embarrassing yourself and tearing her image. you have no shame.

he left him and walked to Tiana's ward.

he walked in and found Tiana with Lwazi

Lwazi: ahhhh finally... its about time.

Zithu: sorry I was gone for long. everything is just a mess.

Lwazi: and the chaos outside?

Zithu: ..... just some commotion nothing serious.

Lwazi: mhm.. well I guess I can leave right?

Zithu nodded.

Lwazi walked out after saying goodbye to Sphe who was in Tiana's hands.

after he left Zithu went to sit near the bed.

Zithu: Lwazi told me about your friend. how are you?

Tiana: ..... I am..... okay.

Zithu: you must be going through a lot since she even died right next to him. its not easy speaking to someone one minute and the next that person is gone. the time doesn't allow us to heal.

Tiana:..... mhm..... (sigh) I heard Lwazi said you were a crying mess. something happened with Nkululeko?

Zithu looked down and at Tiana.

Zithu: Lwazi likes exaggerating. I was just upset but nothing big.

Tiana: are you serious?

Zithu: mhm. so don't worry.

Tiana: mhm

Zithu looked at Sphe.

Zithu: I told you you would get the hang of it. look at you.

Tiana: mhm... I am trying.

Zithu: you will be ok. anyway when will you get discharged?

Tiana: today.

Zithu: that's great. The house is preddy cold.

Tiana: yah I almost forgot how the house looks like.

Zithu: come on you have only been here for less then a week. it cant be that bad.

Tiana: it is that bad. I am starting to look like this bed

Zithu: (laughs) you really are. I almost couldn't recognise you.

Tiana: mxm. don't get me started.

Zithu: (laughs) don't start you will teach my princess nonsense.

they both laughed.

Zithu held her hand that was balancing Sphe.

Zithu: we are one. we are a family now. we have to hold each other. we only have each other.

Tiana: (smiles)

## CHAPTER 41

- AT THEIR NEW MAIN HOUSE -

- TIANA -

The baby has been crying for a while now I can clearly hear her I am looking at her but I don't feel for her I don't feel anything.

I kept staring at her while she cried.

Zithu: Tiana!!!

I could hear Zithu for me but I couldn't move my eyes were still kept at Sphe.

it was when Zithu pushed me aside that I snapped and realised what was happening.

not that I didn't know what was happening but I was just stuck in the moment.

Tiana: oh sorry.

Zithu: what is wrong with you?

Tiana: I .....

Zithu: No Tiana. Sphe has been crying and crying and you are here looking at her just like that instead of picking her up and trying to find out what she wants.

Tiana: I am sorry.

Zithu: Sorry??? Tiana I know you are going through a lot but taking out on an innocent child is not on.

Tiana: I....

Zithu just took Sphe and walked out with he bottle.

Zithu: sorry nana... sorry girl...

I sat on the chair feeling numb.

- LATER -

- NARRATOR -

Tiana was sitting in the living room watching TV.

her phone rang and she checked the caller ID. it was Slindile.

she ignored it.

it rang again and she ignored it.

Zithu walked in.

Zithu: wont you answer?

Tiana: ..... no... its Slindile.

Zithu: so? why are you not answering her calls?

Tiana: I already know she is going to console me. saying she is sorry and asking if I am ok..... I don't need that right now. thank you.

Zithu walked to her and sat next to her.

Zithu: mhm.

Tiana: listen Zithu about earlier. I am sorry.

Zithu: ..... you should never do such a thing ever again.

Tiana: I wont. I really don't know what happened seriously I just blacked out. even thought I could hear her cry I just didn't became still.

Zithu went closer to Tiana.

Zithu: Tiana you know I love you. you will always be my wife and the mother of my kids. and if you need anything please

**Sponsored**

please talk to me. I know we are both going through a lot but we have to hold each other.

Tiana nodded.

Zithu: I spoke to our doctor she suggested that you see a therapist.

Tiana looked at Zithu.

Tiana: are you implying that I am crazy?

Zithu: if I thought you were crazy I would mention a mental institution

Tiana looked at Zithu.

Zithu: I will be attending the sessions with you. take it as a family counselling. don't you think we need that?



Tiana: but I can talk to you. why should I still talk to strangers and start over opening cans of warms? hai.

Zithu: it doesn't have to be now now you are a bit sensitive. but when you are ready.

Tiana: I don't think I will ever be ready.

Zithu: Tiana?

Tiana: I want to go to Thami's funeral.

Zithu: its tomorrow. you haven't spoken to the family yet.

Tiana: I know... I don't want to go near the funeral just a distance just to say goodbye

Zithu: should I take you there?

Tiana: please.

Zithu: well I only heard its tomorrow but I don't know where?

Tiana: I will have to call her sister.

Zithu: you still talk?

Tiana: mhm.

Zithu: ok. you will tell me the location then.

Tiana; ok.

Zithu: but also think about the sessions.

Tiana: ok...

she smiled and Zithu smiled back.

- NEXT DAY -

- AT THE CEMETRY -

Zithu's car stopped a bit far from where the funeral was held.

Tiana got out wearing her black outfits.

she stood next to the car and looked at the crowd as they sang and as the pastor preached.

Tiana started crying but held herself from breaking down. so she cried in silence.

Zithu: are you okay?

Zithu asked as he walked behind Tiana and held her waist.

Tiana: mhm.

Zithu: Thami is probably smiling right now because you are here.

Tiana: you think?

Zithu: mhm.

Tiana: well that Bit\*\*\* is probably telling God to punish me for not fulfilling my promise (laughs)

Zithu: well then if he punishes you then he will have to go through me first

Tiana: and who are you to go against the wrath of God?

Zithu: I am his creation. surely he wont hurt me.

Tiana laughed.

Tiana: you need Jesus in your life.

Zithu: is that an invitation to start going to church?

Tiana: maybe!

Zithu: God is everywhere. and he has helped us a lot.

Tiana: true.

she smiled.

Zithu: I miss Sphe already how long will we be here.

Tiana: we just got here. can you let me say my goodbye.

Zithu: saying goodbye takes 5 seconds. even less when you speak faster.

Tiana: (laughs) dear husband. you never change.

they laughed softly.

Zithu: and you still love me that way.

Tiana: my only crazy truth.

Zithu laughed.

Zithu hugged Tiana and they watched the funeral together.

## CHAPTER 42

- WEEKS LATER -

- AT THEIR NEW MAIN HOUSE -

- TIANA -

I was sitting outside with Sphe in her pram.

I kept pushing her back and forward as I stared at the grass letting my mind wonder. the music was not even helping. instead of making me relax and calm I kept being reminded of what happened.

it just makes me remember everything everyone of it.

Sphe started crying. I looked at her.

"isn't it enough?" I asked myself while looking at her.

as I continued to look at her I started crying. I didn't know what was happening but I felt sad very sad. so I started crying.

- SOMEWHERE -  
- NARRATOR -

The black car parked outside the restaurant. Amanda got out of her dad's car with the child on her baby seat.

Grandpa spoke to Amanda's parents and Amanda apologized to them. she told them everything and after a long time they accepted her back.

now she is going to meet Bongani. after so long she faces him again.

Amanda swallowed and walked in the restaurant while carrying the child with her car seat with one hand.

she looked around and spotted Bongani already looking at her from the corner of the restaurant.

she couldn't believe how much she had changed.

Bongani grew his beard and now it was filled on his face very untidy. he also had a beanie on which made him look like beggar.

Amanda looked at the car and looked at Bongani.

she walked to him.

she got to the table and sat down.

Bongani: Amanda.....

he looked at her with painful eyes that were watery.

Amanda: Bongani...

he then looked at the child and tears started being visible from his eyes one blink and they would come out.

Bongani: is that my baby girl?

Amanda swallowed and nodded.

Bongani looked at her and looked at the baby

Bongani's tears rushed down his cheek. he quickly wiped it.

Bongani: can I hold her?

Amanda wasn't sure to agree or disagree she looked down and thought. in a public place where there is people what could he do? that's the reason why Amanda asked him to meet her here anyway so that she felt safe.

she nodded and slowly handed Bongani the car seat with the child kicking and playing inside.

Bongani held the car seat carefully and looked at her.

Bongani: Valentine??

he said as he smiled at her.

Amanda wanted to shed down as she looked at Bongani asking like that. he looked like he had changed. she was a different side of him.

Bongani: thank you. thank you for bringing her to me.  
Amanda: yah.

Bongani then looked at her.

Bongani: how are you?

Amanda: I am fine... what... what about you?

Bongani: I miss you.

when he said that Amanda looked down realizing how much she missed him too and hearing him say that is like crazy.. her thoughts were betraying her.

instead of following the plan to ask for a divorce

**Sponsored**

she was falling in his arms again.

Amanda looked at Bongani as one of her tear rushed down her cheek.

Amanda: I missed.... you too.

Bongani: ..... well are you coming home?

Amanda looked down playing with her fingers..

she didn't know whether to refuse or accept. she didn't know what to say. her heart was feeling sorry for Bongani her heart wanted to give him another chance. but her head kept on remembering the painful kicks and slaps that I got from this man. she was divided and Bongani knew that. and that's why he was using it to his advantage.

Bongani: I mean you love me I love you. we missed each other so why don't we stay together? huh?

Amanda:.....

Bongani: I promise I am a better man. I will do better communicate better treat you better. Valentine needs love from both parents she needs a stable home. and we both can give her that. come on love. I am already dying because you are not in my life. look at me. I have been dying without you. please my love come back home and let me treat you like the queen you are. I am sorry for how I act but I promise I am better. counselling helped.

Amanda betrayed herself and her daughter when she smiled and nodded.

Bongani smiled and held her hand with one hand as the other was holding Valentino in the car seat.

Amanda looked out of the window to see the car and it was still there. she looked at Bongani and smiled.

- HOURS LATER (LATE AT NIGHT) -

it was almost midnight. Zithu was sleeping and Sphe was also sleeping.

Tiana couldn't sleep. actually Sphe just slept now after Tiana fed her milk and shushed her to sleep.

Tiana couldn't go back to sleep no matter how much she tried and already she had her sleeping pills she couldn't have more.

she walked out of the room and walked to the kitchen.

she made some tea and sat down sipping on the tea as she let her mind wonder again.

## CHAPTER 43

- WEEKS LATER -
- AT THE NEW MAIN HOUSE -
- NARRATOR -

Worthless lonely wondering if there is anyone who cares for her cant sleep at night eyes always full of tears feeling as if its hard to breath panicking confused cant focus self blame low self esteem.

those are the things Tiana is facing.

She keeps asking herself " I just got a child why am I not happy? why am I not overjoying like how Amanda was? why cant I even smile? why?"

sometimes she blames herself for not having enough love for Sphe and her husband Zithu.



Today she had enough. enough of feeling broken? feeling confused. she had decided that the World is better off without her.

she was standing near the kitchen counter with 3 bottles of pills.

Days ago Zithu's doctor explained that she could be having PPD and recommended depression pills to take but after 3 days of taking the pills Tiana stopped taking the pills and started throwing them away when Zithu gave her. now she was on her peak she wanted to step on the footsteps of Thami. maybe there is light outside of this world.

She walked to the tap and poured herself a glass of water.

she then placed it down and looked at it as she looked at the bottles with tears in her eyes.

she opened one bottle and poured a bunch of pills in her hands.

she drank all of them and used the water to get them down.

before she could finish all of them Zithu walked in the kitchen with Sphe in his hands and saw Tiana taking those pills. at first he thought she was only taking one but after he saw the bottle laying down and her hand

filled with more pills he quickly ran up to her and slapped the pills out of her hand.

Zithu: Mami!! what..... did you drink them?

he asked concerned as he saw Tiana looking at him helplessly and tears just rushing out.

Zithu: Mami talk to me did you take the pills?

Tiana slowly nodded as more tears came out.

Zithu: okay okay.... how. how many did you take? tell me it is not what I think it is. tell me you didn't take a lot of pills to commit suicide?

Tiana cried and used the counter to balance herself.

Tiana: I am sorry Zithu.. I am sorry...

Zithu ran to put Sphe safely and carefully down then he took his phone calling his doctor as he helped Tiana sit down.

Zithu: I don't know how many she took.

Doc: you have to rush her to the hospital now!!

Zithu: okay

**Sponsored**

then he took his phone calling his doctor as he helped Tiana sit down.

Zithu: I don't know how many she took.

Doc: you have to rush her to the hospital now!!

Zithu: okay on it.

Doc: make sure she doesn't close her eyes. no matter what she shouldn't close her eyes. talk to her scare her but never let her close her eyes.

Zithu: ok.

Zithu hung up and called Josh.

Josh: sir?

Zithu: Josh I need you here as in like yesterday Tiana has to go to the hospital we have no time. hurry with a car to take us there.

Josh: yes sir.

Josh still stays at the old main house.

Zithu held Tiana's cheeks and looked at her.

Zithu: Mami why?

Tiana: I am sorry Zithu.... I had to... I am tired... tired...

Zithu: stay with me Mami please stay with me. Sphe needs you I need you. please.

Tiana just looked at him.

Zithu: I know a lot happened in such a short period of time and I believe we can fight it together. ok? I am here Sphe is here. together we are a shield.

Tiana didn't say anything she was slowly getting tired and sleepy. but Zithu was there making sure she didn't sleep.

After a while Josh arrived and Zithu put Sphe in a car seat and they drove to the hospital.

once again Sphe was also not still. poor Zithu who had to multitask by keeping Zithu awake and shushing Sphe to calm down.

he was at the verge to breakdown but he knew he had to be strong for his family.

Tiana refused counselling and only agreed to get the pills which she stopped taking after 3 days.

- AT THE HOSPITAL -

Zithu rushed in holding Tiana in the hospital already screaming for help.

josh came behind them holding Sphe.

Doc: hi sir? what is the problem with her?

Zithu: overdose. I tried keeping her up.

Doc: ok.

he called more nurses to bring the bed and all that.

Zithu followed as they took her to a ward but they couldn't let him in.

Josh was also following but at a distance.

Zithu put his hands on his head and tears came out of his eyes.

he literally fell on his knees and bowed his head with his forehead touching the floor.

Zithu: God..... I don't ask for riches I don't ask for gold. all I ask is that you save her.... please.... save her lord. save her...

Zithu broke down crying right there.

he didn't care who was looking he didn't care whether he was embarrassing himself or not. he was on his knees crying like a little child. his heart was painful he was in pain. but in pain that can not be identified.

- AT THE PRISON -

Nkululeko came out thinking Zithu was the one visiting but turns out it was grandfather.

he went to sit down.

Nkululeko: Grandpa?

Grandpa: Nkululeko.

Nkululeko: I wasn't expecting you to come here.

Grandpa: I know... I mean why would I come here?

Nkululeko didn't say anything.

Grandpa: did you tell him?

Nkululeko: I told you I would tell him.

Grandpa: everything?

Nkululeko looked at Grandpa.

Grandpa: well?

Nkululeko: I told him about the accident and his father.

Grandpa: mhm.... good.

Nkululeko: I am also thinking of telling him something else.

Grandpa: what?

Nkululeko: that his mother is alive.

Grandpa looked at him with shock.

Nkululeko: see living as an outcast came in handy. while trying to prove myself and always snooping around for information on the company I ended up hearing what I wasn't supposed to hear. how could you grandpa? how could you take his mother away like that?

#### CONTINUATION OF 43

- AT PRISON -

- NARRATOR -

grandpa looked at Nkululeko with shock and confusion.

Grandpa: what are you talking about?

Nkululeko: ohhh that's how you want to lay it?

Grandpa: I am not laying anything what do you mean Zithu's mother is still alive?

Nkululeko: Grandpa would you stop acting. I know she is. you said that.

Grandpa: when?

Nkululeko sighed seeing that Grandpa didn't want to admit it.

Nkululeko: I know I am not your favourite grandson.....  
but.....

Grandpa: woah woah woah.... Nkululeko. when did I say Zithu's mom is alive?

Nkululeko sighed and leaned back.

Nkululeko: I heard you talking to someone on the phone. you told that person that no one should know that Nandi is alive. and no one should know where she is. her and her daughter should stay in hiding.

Grandpa: (chuckles) its these kind of misunderstandings that might break a family for nothing.

Nkululeko: what did I misunderstand. the only Nandi with a daughter here is Zithu's mom.

Grandpa: have respect boy you don't address her by her name nakedly. she was your aunt.

Nkululeko looked down and looked at grandpa waiting for answers.

Grandpa: yes I was talking about Nandi but not Zithu's mom. I was talking about my brother's granddaughter.

Nkululeko: what?

Grandpa: yes. I wasn't talking about Zithu's mom.

Nkululeko: but why would you help your brother's daughter fake her death?

Grandpa: I don't owe you any explanation I was only clarifying the truth. the rest is non of your business.

Nkululeko kept quiet.

Grandpa: you know... you really took your father's path. my worst fear actually happened.

Nkululeko just looked at him.

Grandpa: from the day I saw how you always hated how Zithu followed you around I knew that a seed of evil was planted in you. but there wasn't much I could do since you never lived with me you were always with your parents.

Nkululeko: (chuckles in disbelief) Grandpa maybe if you had just noticed me just once maybe I wouldn't have taken that road.

Grandpa: now its my fault?

Nkululeko:.....

Grandpa: you don't make decisions and choices that are wrong and blame it on someone else. was I there when you decided to be part of this evil plan to kill Zithu? was I there when you tried to get him arrested chased from the company? was I there?? did I contribute in that.

Nkululeko: I didn't mean to hurt him.... ok!

Grandpa: but you did.

Nkululeko: and you think I don't know.

Grandpa: ..... right now as we speak he is a mess. he should be the one who is strong enough to help his wife out of depression but he is diving into the pot of depression as well. and whose fault is that?

Nkululeko didn't say anything.



Grandpa: I only came here to tell you that if anything happened to Zithu or his family trust me I will write you off this family for good. you and your useless mother. Mark my words.

Nkululeko looked down as Grandpa stood up.

Nkululeko: you never loved me. right?

Nkululeko asked while looking down.

Grandpa turned his head to Nkululeko who was still looking down.

Grandpa: those I ignore I love deeply those I show compassion I love less. my fear of showing my love is that people would use it for their advantages

**Sponsored**

especially if there is evil planted in them. but now? I don't know.

he walked out.

Nkululeko held in his tears as the guards came to take him back to his cell.

- AT THE HOSPITAL -

Zithu was sitting on the chair with his head laying on the bed and Tiana sleeping besides him.

Tiana woke up first and looked around.

it was only after a while that her mind came back to her and she remembered what she was doing here and what happened.

she looked at Zithu feeling guilty. she has to be strong and fight but here she was worrying Zithu again.

she looked up to the ceiling as her mind started wondering around.

after a few minutes The nurse walked in with a glass of water and Zithu was woken up by the talking.

Zithu: Mami!!

he said as he looked at Tiana and the nurse who was injecting her with something.

Zithu: nurse is everything ok?

Nurse: yes sir she is doing fine

Zithu nodded.

The nurse walked out and Tiana looked at Zithu.

Tiana: I disappointed you again right?

Zithu: you damn right.

Tiana: (sigh)..... I am sorry.

Zithu: what where you thinking?

Tiana: ..... I just..... I thought.....

Zithu: its okay... don't upset yourself... just calm down.

Tiana: where is Sphesihle? did I hurt her?

Zithu: no. she is ok.

Tiana: (sighs in relieve) thank goodness.

Zithu: why would you think you hurt her?

Tiana: my mind was everywhere and I heard her cries but didn't know what was happening so I thought maybe I hurt her.

Zithu: no she is fine. she just needs her strong mother.

Tiana: mhm.....

there was a short silence.

Tiana: Zithu..

Zithu: mhm?

Tiana: maybe you were right. maybe I do need some sessions.

Zithu: what? are you serious?

Tiana nodded.

Tiana: I don't want to hurt anyone I don't want to live like this. I feel very lonely confused out of place and its very tiring. I need a fresh start I need a fresh environment I need a fresh air.

Zithu: what do you suggest we do? move out of the house?

Tiana: well... I was thinking maybe we could go to the Village. something about nature makes a person relax. I had that feeling with your garden.

Zithu: well if we are going to go to grandma's house we will need to get new furniture for her because I wont stay a week with those old furniture.

Tiana: (laughs) don't let her hear you say that.

Zithu: I wont even try.

they both laughed.

Zithu: ok. I will talk to grandpa about the company I don't think it will be a problem to manage it technologically and have my meetings on zoom.

Tiana: great. and I know grandma would love having Sphe around. and with work there I don't think I will have time to overthink.

Zithu: well that's a great thing.

Tiana: can we go as soon as I get discharged?

Zithu: ok you tell your grandmother then I will inform grandpa and also pack our bags.

Tiana: Thank you.

Zithu: I just want us to be a happy family just like in the beginning.

Tiana: what beginning? you used to tease me all day.

Zithu: well I want to tease you more without you thinking I am being serious and being insecure. I want to call you a pig and hear you tell me "at least I am pink and pink stands for beauty".

Tiana: (laughs) ok. Scar.

Zithu smiled and held her face.

Zithu: come back. okay?

Tiana: same to you... come back...

they smiled at each other.

Zithu pulled Tiana closer and their foreheads touched.

Zithu: lets fight for the sake of Sphe.

Tiana: mhm... and more of our children.

Zithu: you not scared of giving birth now?

Tiana: for you I would give birth to 100 kids.

Zithu: don't give me ideas I might create a whole country.

they laughed.

## CHAPTER 44

- WEEKS LATER -

- SOMEWHERE -

- NARRATOR -

Amanda stood at the kitchen making food. as always his so called husband was not home. but this time she wasn't asking herself questions she was on a mission and she has to be brave for this.

she cooked dinner as normal while caring for Her baby Valentine.

After a while Bongani walked in drunk.

Amanda was shocked that Bongani was drunk because its been days since she came back home but Bongani was caring and loving. she almost thought he was changed for real.

but today something in her told her that today was the day Bongani will lose it.

as soon as she saw him walking in drunk she went to get her phone and put it in her pocket. The police number

was already on speed dial. airtime was recharged from long ago.

Amanda never agreed to coming back home just because she believed Bongani she did it because it was the only way to get Bongani arrested. yes if she could tell the police without proof then the case would have little chance of being taken serious so she had to get the evidence.

for days Bongani has been behaving and Amanda started thinking maybe he changed. but today he looks angry more like the Bongani she knew.

Amanda: love... you are home.

Bongani looked at Amanda. Amanda swallowed and smiled.

Bongani walked to her and Amanda got scared and started stepping back while trembling and already her voice was cracking.

Amanda: Bo-Bongani... what are you doing?

Bongani: you look scared.

Amanda: I am not... I am just asking because I am cooking right now.

Bongani: are you scared of me?

Amanda: me?.... huh.... no....

Bongani: so you are not scared of me. I am a puppy here by you... I am nothing neh?

Amanda: no

**Sponsored**

not like that.. what I mean is that I respect you.. that's all.

Bongani: LIAR!!

he said as he pushed her towards the plates and the pot with hot soup fell on the floor and that scared Valentino and upset her.

Amanda secretly reached for her phone and dialled the police.

but as that happened Bongani saw her but didn't see that she already dialled the number.

he picked the phone away from her hand.

Bongani: what do you think you are doing? huh? are you trying to anger me?? huh?

he started hitting her again as Amanda screamed and cried.

Valentine was also adding to the noise.

the police on the other hand were listening and already trying to trace where the phone is calling from.

after a while of beating Bongani walked around holding his head. he was like a crazy psycho waiting to kill.

he walked to her and picked her up.

Bongani: clean this mess you made go and calm Valentine down. when I come back from taking a bath this place better be clean and food should be ready.

he pushed her aside and walked to his room.

Amanda looked at her phone that was now cut off. maybe the airtime finished or the police cut the call. she didn't know what to do.

she lay on the floor listening to Valentine crying. her body was painful.

she got up and did as told. with her body aching she cleaned the kitchen and calmed Valentine down.

she didn't know what to serve him since the pots spilled all the soup. at least the meat was in the oven.

she put another pot to make another pot of soup.

after a while Bongani walked in and looked at Amanda.

he looked down and walked to her.

Bongani: Ama.....

he was about to touch her but she moved her arm away trembling. revealing how frightened she was.

\*knocking on the door\*

they both looked at the door and at each other..



Bongani went to open and was surprised to see the police.

Amanda cried when she saw the police and ran to get valentine.

Bongani: can I help you officers.

Officer: yes..

the officer looked at the Amanda who had fresh wounds and was crying.

Officer: we got a tip about abuse here.. sorry ma'am are you ok.

Amanda looked at the officer and at Bongani who was giving him a death stare.

the officer saw how afraid she was and as a woman she understands how scared she was and how she didn't want to answer.

judging from the fear that ran in her eyes she could tell that Bongani is the one who beat her up. and Amanda was looking at the Officer wishing that she could get the signs.

Officer: sir you will have to come with us.

Bongani: what? what did I do? I didn't do anything.

the other 2 officers held him taking him to the car as they told him his rights.

the female Officer stayed with Amanda.

Amanda breathed out of relieve while holding Valentine.

Officer: ma'am are you ok?

Amanda: yes..... mhm...

Officer: you did a good job by calling us at that time.  
don't worry I will make sure he stays behind bars.

Amanda: thank you.

Officer: no problem. I am going to need you to come with us. I want to take you to the hospital to get the bruises checked out.

Amanda: ok.. ok.

Officer: and I would like to take pictures of where the whole thing happened. anything right now will help build up the case.

Amanda: thank you.

Officer: lets go.

- AT THE VILLAGE -

Tiana: ahhhhh my feet.

Granny: don't sit down. Botho is hungry.

Tiana: ahhhhhh!!!!

Zithu laughed as Tiana cried complaining about the lot of work.

Granny: kids of today. how can you get tired after cutting cabbage?

Zithu: laziness

Tiana rolled her eyes at Zithu.

Tiana: Sphe my baby. Daddy has turned against us.

they laughed.

## CHAPTER 45

- AT THE VILLAGE -

- TIANA -

If I don't get used to it now I will never get used to it.

Me: ohhhh Lerato how do you get this right? the water keeps spilling.

Lerato: (laughs) I got used to it. plus I started fetching water since I was young with aunty Sbongile.

Me: really? where is she vele?

Lerato: I don't know. she comes when she wants to and doesn't stay for long.

Me: mhm.... hai.

she laughed and we continued walking.

we got to the yard and Zithu was helping Pakiso with the farming.

Tiana: no one is hurting their leg right?

Zithu: ahhhhhhH! ahhhhH!! Pakiso how could you...

honey I think my leg is numb.

he pretended to cry and whine like a baby.

Tiana: Pakiso how about you hit that leg more harder?  
(smiles)

Zithu: Tiana!!

Pakiso: should I start with the left one? I heard its the weakest one.

Tiana smiled and nodded.

Lerato: not with my uncle. I will dragon ball everyone.

Zithu: now I know who my real wife is.

Tiana: (laughs) (looks at Lerato) you are dead.

Lerato: uncle Zithu!!

Zithu: don't worry she will have to kill me first.

they laughed.

Tiana and Lerato walked in the house and went to drop their buckets.

Tiana: ahhh my head... my neck is about to snap.

Granny: hai suka you are just lazy nje.

Tiana: hai granny don't you think its time you agreed to Zithu helping you upgrade this house?

Granny: hai I don't want to spend all your husbands money on my house. what will Sphe eat?

Tiana: Gogo! you worry too much. take as a gift. a gift to saying thank you for taking care of me.

Granny: shouldn't your step mom receive that gift?

Tiana: mom neh.....

Granny: what is it?

Tiana: ever since I got married we got distant. when I call her she doesn't respond Slindile says she is acting weird.

Granny: we may never know.

Tiana: anyway is Sphe sleeping?

Granny: mhm... she is not really hard to look after. she is a cute calm child. she wouldn't give me issues if she was to stay with me.

Tiana: and what are you implying granny?

Granny: what?

Tiana: it seems like you are about to ask me to leave Sphe with you.

Granny: oh no no

**Sponsored**

no no.. I have raised a lot of kids as you can see even your aunts were not capable enough. so please take your own responsibilities and be different then your aunts.

Tiana: (laughs) ohhh.

- LATER -

we were now sitting outside just having a moment with each other.

Grandma was in the house watching TV Pakiso had gone to his friends as well as Lerato.

we were sitting on the grass right in the yard. we forgot to bring the blanket but didn't mind just sitting on the floor.

Tiana: (sigh) I am so glad the work is done.

Zithu: yah but tomorrow is another day.

Tiana: I know..

Zithu smiled.

Zithu: come here.

he held my shoulder to lay on his lap.

he then started massaging my scalp.

Tiana: mhm... some brain massage... part of what I want.

Zithu: let me guess the other part you want is a back massage right?

Tiana: more like a Body massage.

Zithu: Body massage?

Tiana: mhm.. neck massage shoulder massage back massage BOOOOOBs Massage.

Zithu: come again and say what now?

Tiana: stomach massage.

Zithu: no no what you said before.

Zithu was blushing and getting all ..... yah..

Tiana: you mean back massage?

Zithu: Tiana!! (smiling)

Tiana: what?? you mean a shoulder massage?

Zithu: you know which one. don't make me tickle you.

Tiana: no no tickles.

Zithu: then say it.

Tiana: bbbbb.....

Zithu: b?

Tiana: back massage.

Zithu started tickling me and I started laughing trying to get away from his tickles.

I rolled away.

Tiana: Zithu mahn....

Zithu: you deserved it.

Tiana mxm.

Pakiso walked in the yard.

Tiana: done hanging out with friends?

Pakiso: mhm... granny would kill me if I come later than 17:00

Tiana: is she that strict?

Pakiso: you have no idea.

Tiana: (laughs) chocho.

Pakiso: warning.... don't roll on the grass for long or rather wear a long sleeve shirt or hoodie. or else you might have to bath before going to bed because you will be itching.

Tiana: its this uncle of yours. tell him to stop tickling me.

Pakiso: ticking at this age? uncle Zithu.

Tiana: suka wena...

Zithu: instead of speaking rubbish why not introduce your girlfriend to us before we leave.

Pakiso: I am not dating.

Zithu: yah right!

Pakiso: serious.

Tiana: lying at this age?

Pakiso laughed making his way in the house leaving them outside.

Zithu: he is growing.

Tiana: yes he is.. and I already feel sorry for granny. lets hope he doesn't turn to drugs and gangster.

Zithu: not every boy will turn to that. lets believe in him.

Tiana: mhm....

Zithu: oh and I have spoken to Ms Collins

Tiana: about?

Zithu: our sessions

Tiana: ohhh..

Zithu: ohhh?

Tiana: I just got overwhelmed staying here that I forgot all about that.

Zithu: Mami... you know that.....

Tiana: I know I know. and I promise I will go to the sessions... I just don't know what to expect.

he looked at me and smiled.

Zithu: we are together in this. don't worry.

I smiled and nodded.

I went closer to him and laid my head on his shoulders.

## CHAPTER 46

- 2 MONTHS LATER -
- AT THE VILLAGE -
- NARRATOR -

Grandma: now remember you two. no matter what happens you have to talk communicate. understood?



they nodded.

Grandma: Misunderstandings happen. just because you see 6 doesn't mean its a six someone could be seeing a 9. so talking about it clears the confusion and solves the issue.

Tiana: yes granny.

Grandma: another thing is to never include a third person in your relationship. set boundaries. Zithu you may think laughing with another girl and allowing them to touch your shirt is ok and innocent. but not everyone is as innocent as they look.

Zithu: yes grandma.

Grandma: I don't believe in divorces. I believe love conquers all. but for love to conquer we have to work on it everyday. marriage is maintained everyday. no rest.

they both nodded.

Grandma: I hope you are really listening and not just nodding those big heads of yours.

they laughed as they nodded again.

Tiana: hao granny.

Grand mom: what?

they continued laughing.

- AT THE KEKANA'S -

Mrs Kekana was sitting on the couch thinking.

yes she wanted to do Tiana dirty she was processing the thought and she almost acted on it.

but as the saying goes: "everyone thinks of doing evil others get to the point where they plan evil and some end up doing evil. its always up to us to decide to go ahead or pull back because its better for us"

and she did. she realised it was not worth it that it would cause a lot of damage expecially if she is caught. yes she wanted to steal the child and sell her off

### **Sponsored**

just to poison the marriage and separate the two. but she stopped herself.

she didn't want her daughter to see her as an evil person or her husband to leave her. so she backed up and left everything alone.

of cause her heart stings every time she hears about Tiana and Zithu because it could have been Keisha and Zithu. she still hates Keisha for running away.

but she decided to stay back be alone and just settle her feelings down.

she picked up her phone and called Tiana.

Tiana picked up almost immediately.

Tiana: mom?

she didn't answer she just listened.

Tiana: mom?? are you there?

she decided to respond.

Mrs Kekana: Tiana.

Tiana: mom!!! I missed you so much... how are you?

Mrs Kekana: are you well?

Tiana: I asked you first.... anyway I am great...

Mrs Kekana: ..... I am glad.

Tiana: .....mom.... are you okay?

Mrs Kekana: ..... live happy.

Tiana: mom??

Tiana was worried hearing her step mother like that worried her. she always took Mrs Kekana as her real mother and had so much love for her.

Tiana: ..... mom??

Mrs Kekana: take care of your family too...

Tiana:.....

Mrs Kekana: that's all I wanted to say..

she quickly hung up and looked at her phone as tears started building up in her eyes.

she blinked looking up to take back her tears.

Tiana was confused and tried calling back but Mrs Kekana didn't answer she felt so guilty for what she was about to do. she didn't think she deserved even talking to Tiana

she was also guilty because Tiana loved her so much and she knew that. but not once did she give her a chance.

- LATE -

- AT THE VILLAGE -

Tiana: You think everything will be fine?

Zithu: mhm... it will be..

Tiana: you promise?

Zithu: I promise....

Tiana smiled and snuggled onto Zithu's chest as Zithu cuddled her.

Tiana: I really hope so.

Zithu: you worry a lot. you need to stop worrying and trust me.

Tiana: I love you.

Zithu: I love you more.

they had a baby kiss and Tiana smiled and laid on his chest closing her eyes.

- DAYS LATER -

Grandma: bye my children. bye Sphe..

Tiana: bye Grandma. Pakiso take care of grandma I don't want to hear complaints.

Pakiso: haibo Tiana!!

Zithu: if he gives you problems grandma call me.

Grandma: oh yes I will.

Pakiso: seems like I am stuck forever.

they laughed.

Tiana: ok guys stay well. Lerato take care of Kagiso. ok?

he nodded.

they waved goodbye got in the car and drove off.

## CHAPTER 47

- BACK TO THE NEW MAIN HOUSE -

- NARRATOR -

The car drove in the yard and parked in the garage.

Zithu: is she sleeping?

Tiana: mhm she must be tired.

Zithu: it is preddy late.

Tiana smiled as she gently held Sphe with her car seat and got out the car.

Tiana: will you come with the bags?

Zithu: mhm just go put Sphe to sleep.

Tiana: thank you.

she smiled and walked in the house as Josh and Zithu came with the bags.

Josh put them in the living room.

Zithu: thank you Josh.

Josh: just doing my work sir.

Zithu smiled and tapped Josh's shoulders.

Josh: huh Mr Khoza. will you and Mrs Khoza ever go back to the big house?

Zithu: mhm.... (thinking) well I will hear what Mrs Khoza has to say. but I am sure we will. my aim is to have a full house.

Josh laughed.

Zithu: why do you ask? tired of Lwazi already?

Josh: actually no. he is better then I expected even his wife is kind and loving. but the fights eash.

Zithu: (laughs) yah.. those two are like me and Mrs Khoza when we first lives together. we didn't know each other and well we didn't love each other.

Josh: but sir yours was different. even though you didn't love each other you made each other feel at ease by keeping the peace in the house. now with them. its screams and shoutings all the time.

Zithu: don't worry he is just growing up. fatherhood is like that.

Josh: eash.. hope it ends soon. I hate always having to walk around the house like there is eggs.

Zithu: (laughs) it will be fine. just let them be.

he nodded.

Zithu: ok thank you for your help. see you next time

Josh: see you next time sir hopefully this time you will be coming back.

Zithu laughed as Josh walked out.

Zithu followed so that he could lock the gates and the door.

he came back and took the bags to their room. he found Sphe in the room.

Tiana: what were you and Josh talking about that took so long?

Zithu: nothing much just how Lwazi and his wife is giving my helpers headache.

Tiana: are they abusing them?

Zithu: with their fighting and arguing yes.

Tiana laughed.

Tiana: I can only imagine Lwazi shouting. I mean he is always just so happy and smiling and talking nonsense well most of the time.

Zithu: he does have a temper but it only comes out when he is really triggered. so I wonder what his wife does to trigger him.

Tiana: (Laughs) maybe they are meant to be.

Zithu took out his clothing and wore his pyjamas.

Zithu: well I guess.

he smiles and walked in bed.

Tiana: your feet are so cold.

Zithu: they always are.

Tiana: hai hai hai... they are very cold its like an icepack.

Zithu: (laughs) then warm them.

he moved his feet to Tiana and Tiana laughed as she tried moving away her feet but Zithu kept following her.

Tiana: Kakashi stop.

Zithu stopped and looked at Tiana.

Zithu: Kakashi where?

Tiana: you are Kakashi

Zithu: me? ohhhh because of my scar huh?

Tiana: mhm.. just like you.. he also sometimes covered it like you covered your scar before.

Zithu: wait how do you know who Kakashi is?

Tiana: haibo don't we watch Anime together?

Zithu: but still you don't even know who is Naruto.

Tiana: well one time I watched it and they called his name so I kept it and wrote it down because every time he appears

**Sponsored**

so I kept it and wrote it down because every time he appears I remember you.

Zithu chuckled then once again traced his cold feet to Tiana and poor Tiana who was wearing something short felt the cold feet of Zithu and laughed again trying to move away and cover her skin with a blanket between them.

- DAYS LATER -



Zithu: Mami what are you still doing?? we are being late.

Tiana: 2 more minutes.

Zithu: you said that 5 times in the past hour.

Tiana: this time I am serious.

Zithu shook his head and looked at Sphe.

Zithu: when you grow up never be like mommy.

he then smiled playing with her.

Finally after some time Tiana finished and came out.

They went to the car.

They requested an Uber since Zithu's leg hasn't fully recovered yet so he cant be using it so hard yet. he is already pushing it by walking a lot so driving is a bigger risk.

They got in the car and drove to their old Main house.

on the way Lwazi called Zithu.

Zithu: Lwazi!!

Lwazi: are you almost here.

Zithu: do you miss me that much?

Lwazi: who said I miss you. I just want to see little sphe. then you can leave.

Zithu: you think I would leave my child with you?

Lwazi: hai why not?

Zithu: isn't it obvious? you are bad influence bro.

Lwazi: haaaaa!!

Zithu: hai I don't trust you.

Lwazi: you never did.

Zithu: I always trusted you I just never showed you because I knew you would take advantage of it.

Lwazi laughed.

Lwazi: whatever mahn just arrive already I miss .....  
you....

he then quickly hung up and Zithu smiled.

Tiana: Lwazi? what did he say?

Zithu: being stupid...

Zithu smiled.

later they arrived at the old main house and walked in.

it was just as it is nothing seemed to have changed. even the garden was well taken care of.

They used the small gate which Zithu has the key for that so there was no need to get the phone inside to open.

as he opened the door he was met with all his family and Zithu's family shouting "SURPRISE!!!"

They were shocked and Sphe was shocked well at least that's what we want to think from her expression.

Zithu: what is this?

Lwazi: you really took your time hai.

Grandpa: I almost ate all this food alone.

They smiled looking at everyone who was there.

The biggest surprise was when Keisha and her mom appeared in the crowd. Tiana gave Sphe to Zithu and ran to give them a hug.

Mrs Kekana wanted to cry as she thought about the pain she was planning to cause her. but I guess that would be a secret she keeps to her grave. The hate she had she had to replace it with love.

she smiled and hugged her back.

Mrs Kekana: I am sorry Tiana.

Tiana: no need mom I know you have been very busy. I understand.

Talk about a perfect misunderstanding.

Mrs Kekana was apologising for her evil heart while innocent Tiana thought she was apologising for not being present in her tough times.

I guess somethings can never be known because we don't know how deep they could hurt us. Sometimes its better not to know then to know. because the results may lead to regret.

- LATER -

Tiana was standing outside looking at the garden while everyone was enjoying inside.

Zithu had left Sphe with grandpa and came out to see Tiana.

he smiled when he saw Tiana near the garden.

he walked slowly behind her then knelt down with one knee.

Tiana was too focused on the garden and overthinking that she didn't even see Zithu behind her.

Zithu took out a ring and pulled Tiana's jacket from the back.

Tiana turned already screaming because she wasn't expecting Zithu to be behind her.

Tiana: Zithu!!!

Zithu: Mami!! (smiles) our love story is not the fairy story we all wish for but it lead us here. you gave me love and a wonderful daughter.

Tiana: what are you doing?

Zithu: Mami can you make me the happiest man on earth and remarry me.

Tiana: huh?? but we are already married.

Zithu: but this time I am asking you at first it was by force. now I want you to be with me willingly and freely. I want you to wear the ring I bought with my heart and not the one bought by my helpers.

Tiana: Kakashi!!!

they laughed at the name.

Zithu: yes I will be your Kakashi and you will be my Mami. forever. do you accept?

Tiana nodded and gave her hand.

Zithu put the ring on her finger and Tiana smiled looking at it.

Zithu got up with a bit of a struggle.

Zithu: ohhh my knee.

Tiana: yah grandpa.

Zithu: ohhh you want us to go there Grandma.

they laughed and Zithu hugged her.

Zithu: I love you Mami.

Tiana: I love you Kakashi.

Zithu: ohhh lord...

Tiana laughed.

More New African Novels PDF Downlaod Here:

[www.eBooksteach.Com](http://www.eBooksteach.Com)

FINAL

- MONTHS LATER -

- IN THE CHANGING ROOM (WEDDING HALL) -

I put on my wedding dress and looked at myself in the mirror.

I smiled looking at how beautiful I looked. I slightly remembered the first time I was here yes we chose the same venue we used when we first got married. it was because we wanted to overshadow that sad wedding with this happy and wonderful wedding.

"ohhh you look so beautiful" a voice said behind me. I looked through the window to see who it was with a smile on my face. it was Lwazi's baby mama. she is one of my brides maids and she is probably coming to check on me.

she is very younger then me so she looks at me as her big sister and I look at her as my little sister.

things are not really great with her and Lwazi but it will all work out. Lwazi will grow up and realise that she really loves him.

Me: Thank you.

Her: ohhh I so wish I was you.

Me: don't worry your time is coming Lwazi will come around.

Her: yah.. lets cross our fingers and pray.

we laughed.

suddenly I was reminded of Thami how she came here on my first wedding concerned. she wasn't happy with the decision I made. I hope she sees that it was indeed a

good decision and also forgive me for breaking our biggest promise which was to take care of Jay.

but I know someone will take care of him.

"it is time" that Bree coming in the room to get me to the hall. yes same bree who came to fetch me on my first wedding too.

I cant help but to just compare the 2. its like one was a nightmare and the other is reality.

I looked at Lwazi's baby mama and smiled at her signalling her that she should get ready.

Her: you look wonderful. I cant wait to see Zithu's reaction when he sees you.

Me: he will die.

Her: right!!

we laughed. Bree shook her head and showed me the way. I stood up and we walked out.

- MINUTES LATER -

I walked in with my dad holding my hand the hall was full reporters flashing lights on me and me keeping a genuine smile and not like before. this time I wasn't trying to hide pain or anything I was genuinely happy.

I walked towards my husband to be with a smile on my face and also holding my breath in this tight dress. yah the baby fat was not gone.

and just when I thought about exercising Zithu's juice system was like "not today" because I am yet again pregnant. but I am not showing yet.

I smiled as I saw grandpa holding Sphe on his lap. I blew a kiss to her and she smiled. she was wearing a nice white dress like mommy.

My Husband walked towards me. my dad handed me to him with a smile.

Mr Kekana: once again take care of her.  
Zithu: with my life.

I smiled looking down.

he made me remember our first wedding when he was wheeled to me. he never even looked at me with a mask on his face. he was so cold and serious.

now my Kakashi was walking and didn't have his scar on. he was now free with his scar and didn't put colour contacts he let his blind eye out as well. and I still loved him. actually I loved him more.

I held his hand and as we walked towards the priest

- MOMENTS LATER -

More New African Novels PDF Downlaod Here:

[www.eBooksteach.Com](http://www.eBooksteach.Com)



Pastor: I now pronounce you husband and wife AGAIN (crowd laughs) you may kiss the bride.

he walked closer to me leaned in and placed his lips on mine. the audience cheered and clapped for us. not forgetting the media getting a good view with their cameras.

after a while he smiled looking at me and I blushed looking down.

- MOMENTS LATER -

It was time for us to get in the car and head to our home as a re-married couple.

we walked out the hall hand in hand. Sphe was taken to the car by Josh. the media was flashing us with their camera lights and people where cheering and clapping. I smiled and Zithu kept complimenting me.

out of nowhere Zithu picked me up bridal style with my huge dress and walked to the car. you could've heard Slindile scream I swear her voice was visible.

I covered my eyes shyly as he took me to the car. he put me in and also got in. Sphe was now seated in the middle of us at the backseat Josh drove us to our Second Main house.

- 4 YEARS LATER -

Tiana: hai I will hit you stop playing with these its not for kids.

she said pulling the wire in his hands and putting it away.

she walked to the kitchen and saw Sphe and Lihle playing around.

Tiana: what did I say about running in the house??  
Sphe?? Lihle?? should I give you guys a hiding??

they shook their heads looking at their mother.

but as soon as she looked away they laughed running out. Tiana sighed holding Kuhle in her hands.

Zithu: oh oh... someone looks tired.

Tiana: thank goodness you are done hold Kuhle for me.

Zithu: ok.. come here boy..

Zithu held Kuhle and Tiana continued cooking...

Lihle started crying..

Tiana: hini manje Lihle!!

Zithu: cook

**Sponsored**

I will go check what's up.

Tiana: ok.

Tiana continued cooking and Zithu went to check Lihle.

he saw them in the living room.

Lihle was on the couch crying.

Zithu: haibo what is wrong?

Lihle: baba Sphe hit me with the remote.

Zithu: Sphe you are John Cena now? you are in wrestling now? huh? TLC?

Sphe looked at Zithu.

Zithu: I am asking

Sphe shook her head.

Zithu: now what should you say to Lihle?

Sphe looked at Lihle and walked to him. she rubbed her little hands on Lihle's head.

Sphe: sorry.. sorry Lihle.

Zithu: good. now lets stop playing rugby and lest go pack some snacks. we are going to the park.

Sphe: park baba? hayyyyy!!!

Lihle: YAYYY!!

they jumped up and down as Zithu led them upstairs.

Kuhle is only a few months old.

Zithu'a phone rang as he walked upstairs. he smiled and answered.

Zithu: Nkululeko.

Nkululeko: Zithu.. are you clocking in today?

Zithu: nah not today today I have a family to care about.

Nkululeko: mhm.. I see its very cosy in your house.

Zithu: 3 kids? cosy? try it yourself.

Nkululeko: no thank you. I am good alone. besides I have a lot of things to get my head around.

Zithu: will you be okay?

Nkululeko: mom in prison grandpa enjoying his retirement you have a family and Lwazi still playing around. well I think I will join Lwazi that's if he doesn't find me too old for that.

Zithu laughed.

Zithu: come on you already said it you are too old for that.

Nkululeko: well I must do something.

Zithu: well I have spoken to the shareholders even though they have some doubts on you because you are now an ex con but I am sure they will give you another chance.

Nkululeko: you are too kind Zithu why are you doing this for me?

Zithu: you are my brother. and my grandfather always says forgiveness is good medicine.

Nkululeko: I should have listened to his words more. maybe I wouldn't have turned out like this.

Zithu: ohhh give me the sob stories.... (talks to Sphe and Lihle) hai!! you 2 move from that and put away that lotion back where you found it. (back to the phone) sorry these kids.

Nkululeko: (laughs) they are just being kids.

Zithu: well uncle you have to come visit them one day.  
Nkululeko: I will just not now. now I am still a mess.  
Zithu: its ok. take your time. just not too much time.

they laughed.

Nkululeko: okay mahn let me let you deal with family stuff while I go sleep. its all I do nowadays anyway.

Zithu laughed.

Zithu: okay big bro.

Nkululeko: greet sister in law.

Zithu: will do.

Nkululeko hung up and Zithu smiled.

- FEW MOMENTS LATER -

The family was done having breakfast and were already in the car making their way to the park. yes the Bergbron park.

Zithu's dream to have his family visit this park was now a almost every week thing they did.

laugh and enjoy the sun at the park with the family.

- TIANA -

what started out as a nightmare to be ended up being a blessing.

sometimes the things we think are bad and meant to hurt us are actually the blessings aimed to bless us.

I wont say I regret leaving Jay for a man I didn't love. but someone Thami was right.

if I loved Jay the way I said I did then I would have fought for our love because now I know that if anyone tried to separate me and Zithu I would fight till I die. I wouldn't allow it.

Things happened times passed but I have my family and I love it.

This is my story and I hope you enjoyed it.

#### THANKS FROM WRITER

Thank you all who have taken your time to read this short story that i wrote. I really hope you enjoyed it. as i always say I am a story teller. I specialize in love stories. Romance.

I hope to write more stories for you all

#### **Sponsored**

i hope you become my regular readers.

I would also like to take this time to ask that you support my work through donations.

you can transfer cash transfers to my account:

Bank: Standard bank

Account nr: 10114733099  
Name: Mpoeakae Seqholo

e-wallet:  
0665216239

cash send to any bank please send to 0760477113

Airtime (Vodacom or MTN)  
please send voucher to 0760477113 (Whatsapp)

Your donations will be highly appreciated.

Be on the look out for my next story time.

From: writer Storyteller

**More New African Novels PDF Downlaod Here:**  
**[www.eBooksteach.Com](http://www.eBooksteach.Com) Thanksssssss**